Draft Environmental Assessment for Seismic Reflection Scientific Research Surveys During 2014 and 2015 in Support of Mapping the US Atlantic Seaboard Extended Continental Margin and Investigating Tsunami Hazards

Prepared for

United States Geological Survey

Prepared by RPS Evan – Hamilton Inc. (EHI) an RPS Group Company
in association with YOLO Environmental Inc., GeoSpatial Strategy Group, and Ecology and Environment Inc.

Contributing Authors:

Sue Belford (YOLO)
Kent Simpson (GeoSpatial)
Sara Bowman (E&E)
David Trimm (E&E)
Tony LaPierre (RPS)
Teresa Trenck (RPS)
Jonathan R. Childs (USGS)

May 2014

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDICES

TABLE OF FIGURES

TABLE OF TABLES

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

μ	Micro
BOEM	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
2D	Two Dimensional
CR	Critically Endangered
dB	Decibel re: 1 μPascal m
EA	Environmental Assessment
ECS	Extended Continental Shelf
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EFH	Essential Fish Habitat
EN	Endangered
ENAM	Eastern North American Margins
ESA	Endangered Species Act
EZ	Exclusion Zone
FLS	Fisheries Log Book System
FMZ	Full Mitigation Zone
HMS	Highly Migratory Species
IHA	Incidental Harassment Authorization
I	Irreversible
In^3	Cubic Inches
ICCAT	International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tuna
kHz	KiloHertz
KM	Kilometer
KW	Kilowatt
LC	Least Concern
LME	Large Marine Ecosystem
L-DEO	Lamont—Doherty Earth Observatory
LNG	Liquefied Natural Gas
M	Meter
MAB	Mid-Atlantic Bight
MAR	Mid-Atlantic Region
MARAD	Maritime Administration
MARPOL	Marine Pollution
MBES	MultiBeam EchoSounder
MCS	Marine Conservation Society
MPA	Marine Protected Area
MMPA	Marine Mammal Protection Act
MS	MilliSecond
MT	Metric Ton
NEFSC	Northeast Fisheries Science Center
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NL	Not Listed
NM	Nautical Mile
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NMO	Normal-Moveout
NOAA	National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration
NSF	National Science Foundation
OBIS	Ocean Biogeographic Information System
OCS	Outer Continental Shelf
OEIS	Overseas Environmental Impact Statement

OPR	Office of Protected Resources
PAM	Passive Acoustic Monitoring
PEIS	Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement
PLL	Pelagic Long Lines
PSVO	Protected Species Visual Observer
PTS	Permanent Threshold Shift
R	Reversible
RMS	Root Mean Square
SAB	South Atlantic Bight
SAFE	Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation
SBP	Sub-Bottom Profiler
SEFSC	Southeast Fishery Science Center
SEL	Sound Exposure Level
SOPEP	Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan
SPL	Sound Pressure Level
TAC	Total Allowable Catch
TR	Threatened
TTS	Temporary Threshold Shift
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
USGS	United States Geological Survey
UO	Unexploded Ordnance

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The United States Geological Survey (USGS) proposes to conduct a regional marine two-dimensional (2D) seismic reflection scientific research surveys in the Atlantic over the next two years (2014-2015). The purposes of the project are two-fold: 1) To establish the outer limits of the U.S. continental shelf, also referred to as the Extended Continental Shelf (ECS), as defined by Article 76 of the Convention of the Law of the Sea and 2) To study the sudden mass transport of sediments down the continental shelf as submarine landslides that pose potential tsunamigenic hazards to the Atlantic and Caribbean coastal communities. The activities are proposed to be conducted on the National Science Foundation (NSF) owned vessel, *R/V* Marcus G. *Langseth*, which is operated through a Cooperative Agreement with Columbia University's Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory (L-DEO).

The 2D seismic surveys are proposed to occur between April and August. The 2014 survey is proposed to commence in mid-August and proceed for approximately 18 days (including transits and equipment mobilization and demobilization). This Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) was prepared to fulfill USGS and NSF responsibilities under the National Environmental Policy Act and Executive Order 12114. NSF is participating as a cooperating agency with USGS on this Draft EA.

Scoping for the Draft Environmental Assessment was derived from the Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (PEIS)/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (OEIS) for Marine Seismic Research funded by the National Science Foundation or conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey (June 2011), NSF Record Decision (June 2012), and the USGS Record of Decision (Feb 2013) (referred to herein as NSF/USGS PEIS).

Impact definitions used in the Draft EA were based on magnitude, geographic extent, and duration. Impact zones particularly for marine mammals are defined by the areas within which specific sound level thresholds established by National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) / National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) are exceeded. For cetaceans, NMFS guidelines were used to assess potential hearing impairment effects.

- Received sound pressure level (SPL) ≥ 180 dB re 1 μPa^2 for Permanent Threshold Shift (PTS) in hearing (MMPA Level A harassment)
- Received sound pressure level (RMS) >160 dB re 1 μPa for behavior disturbance (MMPA Level B harassment)

Cumulative effects, such as from commercial vessel traffic, military activities, and other sources of underwater sound were assessed.

Acoustic modeling results provided by the vessel operator Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory (Appendix A) were used to determine 160 dB and 180 dB isopleth radii.

USGS and NSF are committed to the mitigation measures and monitoring as outlined in the NSF/USGS PEIS, which included both pre-cruise planning and operational activities. Key mitigation measures that would be implemented along with the proposed activities are listed below.

The application of mitigation measures would minimize the possibility of potential adverse effects on the environment including marine species, populations, and habitat.

Potential cumulative environmental effects external to the project include fishing, scientific research surveys, military, submarine cables, marine transportation, and potentially other seismic surveys. Cumulative environmental effects resulting from any of the project activities would be negligible and not additive or cumulative because the project activities would be transitory, moving about 200 km a day. With the implementation of mitigation measures and the limited spatial overlap with other activities, any potential for cumulative effects would be minimized.

USGS had submitted an Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA) request to NMFS pursuant to the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) and requests for formal consultation under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) with NOAA and US Fish and Wildlife Service. This Draft EA includes information relevant to the ESA Section 7 consultation and IHA. The IHA application is included in this Draft EA as an Appendix B.

1 INTRODUCTION

The US Geological Survey (USGS) proposes to conduct a regional marine two-dimensional (2D) seismic reflection survey program in two separate field seasons in 2014 and 2015. This survey would be conducted with the *R/V Marcus G. Langseth* (hereafter referred to as the *Langseth*), a research vessel owned by the National Science Foundation (NSF) and operated under Cooperative Agreement by the Lamont—Doherty Earth Observatory (L-DEO) of Columbia University. The survey region (hereafter "Study Area") would be in the northwest Atlantic Ocean within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) and extending into international waters as far as 350 nautical miles (nm) from the coast (Figure 1). Water depth in the Study Area would range from 1,450 m to 5,400 m. The survey is proposed to occur in two phases, the first proposed for August to September 2014 and the second in 2015, between April and August (dates are yet to be determined). As the funding agency, the USGS has taken the lead in the environmental compliance requirements and science planning.

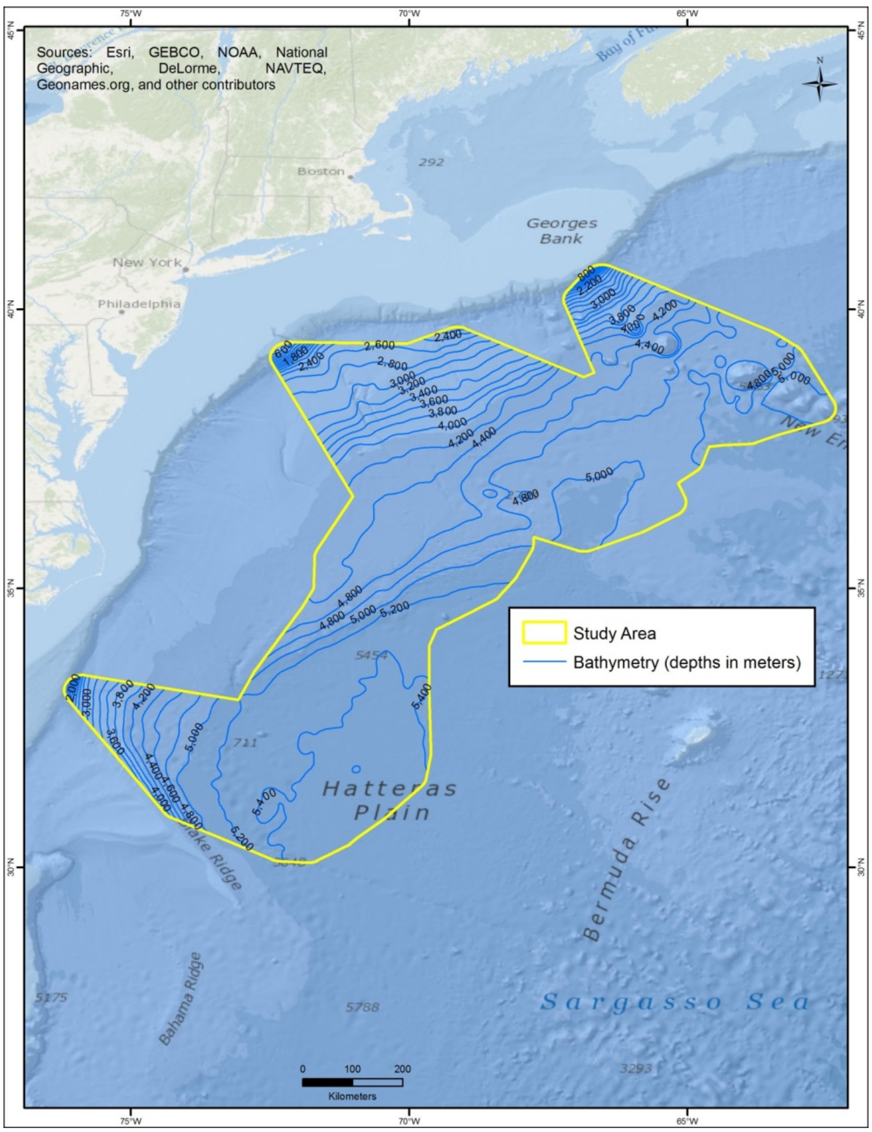


Figure 1: Study Area with Bathymetry

The purpose of this Draft EA is to provide the information needed to assess the potential environmental impacts associated with the proposed seismic surveys.

The Draft EA addresses the requirements of the U.S. National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and Executive Order 12114, Environmental Effects Abroad of Major Federal Actions. Alternatives addressed in this Draft EA consist of a corresponding program at a different time, along with issuance of an associated Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA); and the no action alternative, with no IHA and no seismic survey. This Draft EA tiers to the Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (PEIS)/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (OEIS) for Marine Seismic Research funded by the National Science Foundation or Conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey (June 2011), the USGS Record of Decision (February 2013) and the NSF Record of Decision (June 2012)[1], referred to herein as NSF/USGS PEIS. Additionally, information from the "Draft Environmental Assessment of a Marine Geophysical Survey by the *R/V Marcus G. Langseth* in the Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras, September-October, 2014" (NSF, 2014, referred to herein as NSF ENAM Draft EA) prepared for the NSF U.S. GeoPRISMS Eastern North American Margin (ENAM) seismic survey discusses scientific publications subsequent to the issuance of the NSF/USGS PEIS that are relevant to the proposed actions and therefore are incorporated by reference into this Draft EA.

The USGS is requesting an IHA from the U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and Section 7 consultations under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) to authorize the incidental, i.e., not intentional, harassment of small numbers of marine mammals that could occur during the seismic survey. The information in this Draft EA supports the IHA application process and provides additional information on marine species that are not addressed by the IHA application, including marine and migratory birds, sea turtles, invertebrates, fish; and socio-economic components. The IHA request is included in this document as Appendix B.

The *Langseth* has conducted research seismic surveys world-wide since 2008. Information from previous EAs and IHAs may be found at:

http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/incidental.htm#applications
http://www.nsf.gov/geo/oce/envcomp/index.jsp

Many of these reports and applications were prepared by LGL Limited, Environmental Research Associates, under contract to L-DEO or the USGS. Because material from earlier documents is owned by the U.S. Government and in the public domain, some material common to these documents may have been used verbatim herein without attribution. The USGS and NSF acknowledge the role of LGL in preparing material that has been used.

1.1 PURPOSE AND NEED FOR THE PROJECT

The purposes of the project are two-fold:

[1] http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/environmental_compliance/

1) To establish the outer limits of the U.S. continental shelf, also referred to as the Extended Continental Shelf (ECS), as defined by Article 76 of the Convention of the Law of the Sea[2].

2) To study the sudden mass transport of sediments down the continental shelf as submarine landslides that may pose tsunamigenic hazards to the Atlantic and Caribbean coastal areas.

One of the criteria for defining the outer limits of the ECS under Article 76 involves measuring the thickness of the sediments beneath the seafloor but above the oceanic crust. The sediment thickness must be measured continuously from the foot of the continental slope seaward to a point where the outer limit point is identified. The established method for measuring sediment thickness is seismic reflection profiling (Kasuga et al. 2000). Other scientific methods (such as measurements of marine gravity and magnetic anomalies) may be used to augment the geologic interpretation, but the internationally accepted method for measuring sediment thickness is seismic reflection profiling. An extensive review of the existing database (Hutchinson and others, 2004) demonstrated that existing seismic-reflection data are entirely insufficient to meet the line-spacing or velocity control requirements specified in Article 76.

The proposed survey is part of a larger, multi-agency effort chaired by the U.S. Department of State and co-vice-chaired by Department of Interior and the National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to determine the U.S. entitlement to sovereign rights in the area beyond 200 nautical miles according to established methods of measuring sediment thickness according to guidelines established by the Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf[3].

The study of submarine landslide deposits and the geologic conditions that may trigger them similarly require seismic reflection profiles that transect the sediments perpendicular to the continental shelf. Both subjects (sediment thickness and geologic structure) require seismic-reflection profiles that resolve features on the scale of meters to tens of meters, and penetration of sediments up to several kilometers. The conversion of seismic reflection travel-times (in seconds) to true depth (in meters) is accomplished through the analysis of the normal-moveout (NMO) correction used to stack the multichannel data. The accuracy of NMO corrections is proportional to the length of the receiving streamer. The 8-km offset of the *Langseth* streamer and the proposed energy level of the airgun array are sufficient to ensure reflection signal strength at the farthest offsets would provide the highly accurate acoustic velocity information required.

1.2 REGULATORY CONTEXT

Section 1.8 of the NSF/USGS PEIS provides details of the regulatory regime for seismic programs. The federal acts and agencies with regulatory responsibility for the proposed seismic project are provided in Table 1.

---

[2] Refer to: http://www.state.gov/e/oes/lawofthesea/ and http://continentalshelf.gov/

[3] http://www.un.org/depts/los/clcs_new/documents/Guidelines/ CLCS_11.htm)

Table 1: Responsible Regulatory Agencies and Legislation

Administering Organizations	Act
Council on Environmental Quality	National Environmental Policy Act
Office of the President of the United States	Executive Order 12114
National Marine Fisheries Service	Endangered Species Act
	Marine Mammal Protection Act
	Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Conservation Management Act
Fish and Wildlife Service	Endangered Species Act

1.3 COORDINATION WITH OTHER AGENCIES

These surveys would be conducted by the USGS on behalf of the U.S. Extended Continental Shelf Task Force, an interagency body, chaired by the Department of State with co-vice chairs from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the Department of the Interior. Nine additional agencies (Executive Office of the President, Joint Chiefs of Staff, U.S. Navy, U.S. Coast Guard, Department of Energy, National Science Foundation, Environmental Protection Agency, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, and the Arctic Research Commission) participate in Task Force deliberations.

This Draft EA was prepared by YOLO Environmental Inc. with contributions from Ecology and Environment Inc., both firms under contract to EHI (an RPS company) on behalf of USGS and NSF pursuant to NEPA and Executive Order 112114. Potential impacts to endangered species and critical habitat have also been assessed in the document; therefore, it should be used to support the ESA Section 7(a)(2) consultation process with USFWS. This document should also be used as supporting documentation for an IHA application submitted by USGS to NMFS, under the U.S. MMPA, for "taking by harassment" (disturbance) of small numbers of marine mammals, for this proposed seismic project. The MMPA procedures for issuance of an IHA involve publication of a proposed IHA notice in the Federal Register, solicitation of comments on that notice, and publication of a notice of issuance in the Federal Register, in addition to compliance with NEPA, and, if applicable, the ESA.

USGS and NSF have coordinated and will continue to coordinate, with other applicable Federal agencies as required.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT SCOPE AND METHODOLOGY

The Draft EA scope and methodology for the project have been developed to meet the regulatory requirements under NEPA and Executive Order 112114 The Draft EA includes consideration of the following factors:

- the environmental effects of the project, including any cumulative environmental effects that are likely to result from the project in combination with other projects or activities that have been or would be carried out; and
- measures that are technically and economically feasible and that would mitigate any adverse environmental effects of the project.

1.5 APPROACH

The approach used in this report stresses the importance of focusing the assessment on environmental and socio-economic components of greatest concern to society or as indicators of environmental health. In general, the methodology is designed to produce an EA analysis that:

- focuses on issues of greatest concern;
- addresses issues raised by the public and other stakeholders;
- addresses regulatory requirements;
- integrates mitigation and monitoring; and
- considers cumulative effects

The methodology for this Draft EA included an evaluation of the potential effects from routine activities. The evaluation of potential cumulative effects with regard to other projects and activities includes past, present, and future activities that would be carried out and would interact temporally or spatially with the proposed project.

Preparation of this Draft EA consisted of several steps including:

- assembling project baseline information, including a clear description of the proposed project (Section 2) and developing an understanding of existing conditions (Section 3);
- establishing the scope of the assessment (this section); and
- assessing the potential environmental effects of the project (Section 4) and cumulative effects (Section 5).

1.6 SCOPE OF THE ASSESSMENT

A scoping process focuses the environmental assessment on the project components and activities to be assessed, the key environmental issues, and the appropriate spatial and temporal boundaries. The scope of an EA must be established early in the process to ensure the analysis remains focused and manageable. The scoping process for this assessment included the following:

- project description prepared by USGS;
- previous site-specific NSF EA: Environmental Analysis of a Marine Geophysical Survey by the *R/V Marcus G. Langseth* in the Northeast Atlantic Ocean, June–July 2013;
- review of the draft Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (PEIS) Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) Proposed Geological and Geophysical Activities Mid-Atlantic and South Atlantic Planning Areas (BOEM 2012);

- Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement Overseas Environmental Impact Statement for Marine Seismic Research Funded by the National Science Foundation or Conducted by the U.S> Geological Survey (June 2011);
- preliminary research, which included a review of existing literature, relevant scientific research publications, and regulatory guidelines; and
- professional judgment of the EA preparation team.

This Draft EA tiers to the NSF/USGS PEIS document. The Final BOEM PEIS for Mid-Atlantic and South Atlantic planning areas overlaps with the proposed project area for this survey thus provided useful scientific regional information in deep water. The NSF/USGS PEIS assessed global areas and one detailed analysis area of the northwest Atlantic: a nearshore shallow water location off the coast of New Jersey. Figure 2 shows the area coverage of the BOEM PEIS and the location of the NSF/USGS PEIS NW Atlantic detailed analysis area in relation to the Study Area for this Draft EA.

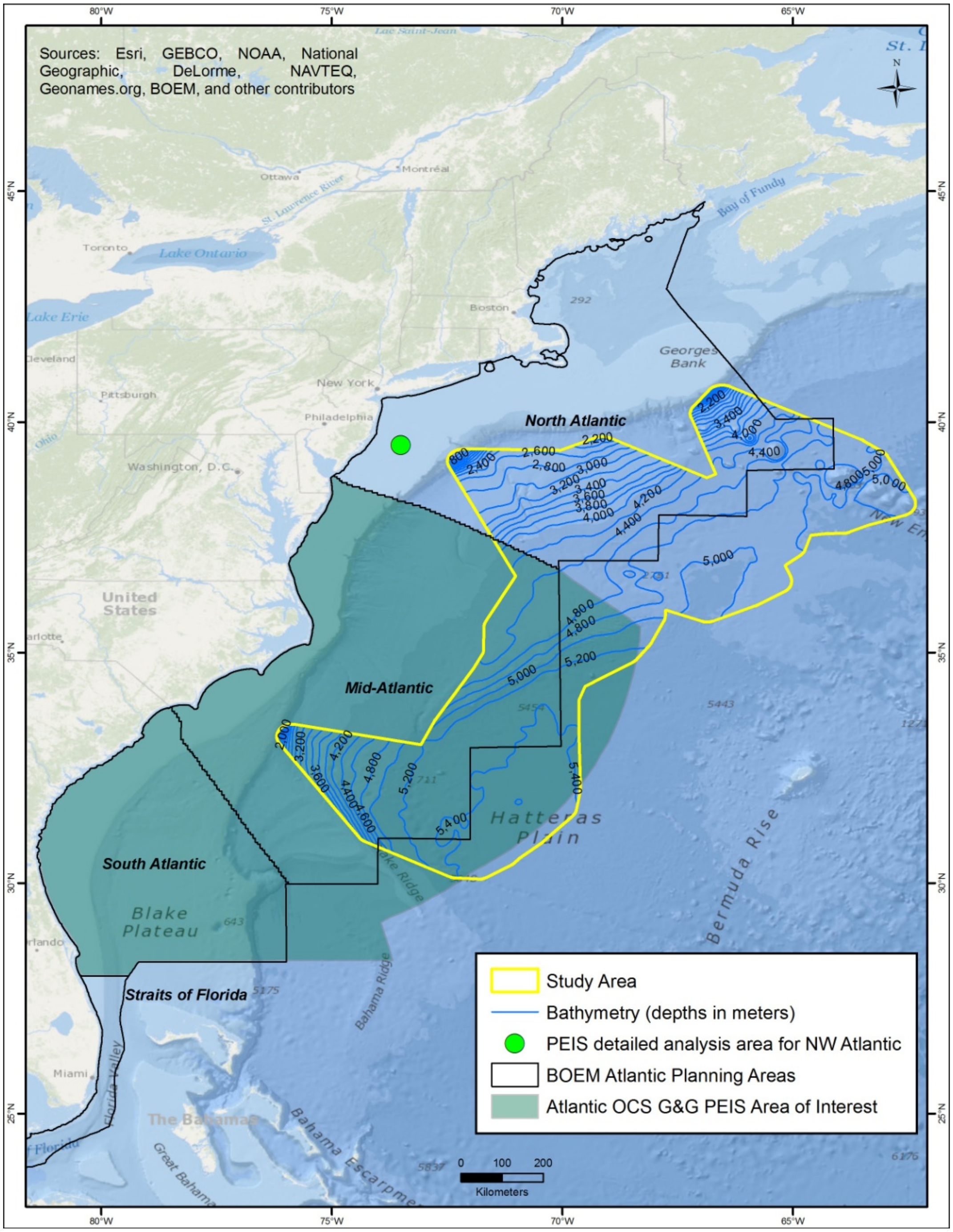


Figure 2: Study Area with NSF/USGS PEIS NW Atlantic detailed analysis area and BOEM Atlantic OCS G&G PEIS Area of Interest

A focused environmental assessment requires a process of scoping to define the components and activities that are to be considered in the assessment, to identify the key environmental issues, and to set the spatial and temporal boundaries of the assessment. While the project activities are generally focused within the footprint of the project activities (i.e., area of influence), the effects of these activities may extend beyond these footprints.

1.6.1 Scoping Requirements

As described in the NSF/USGS PEIS, Chapter 3, the description of the affected environment focuses only on those resources potentially subject to impacts. Accordingly, the discussion of the affected environment (and associated analyses) has focused mainly on those related to marine biological resources, as the proposed short-term activities have the potential to impact marine biological resources within the project area. Initial review and analysis of the proposed project activities determined that the following resource components identified in Table 2 did not require further analysis.

Table 2: Resource Components Determined to Require No Further Analysis

Component	Assessment Considerations
Transportation	Only the R/V *Langseth* would be used during the marine seismic survey. Therefore, projected increases in vessel traffic attributable to implementation of the proposed activities would constitute only a negligible portion of the total existing vessel traffic in the analysis area.
Land Use	All activities are proposed to occur in the marine environment. Therefore, no changes to current land uses or activities within the project area would result from the proposed project.
Benthos and Geological Resources (Topography, Geology and Soil	The proposed project would not interact with the soil or seafloor sediments. Therefore benthic habitat would also not physically be affected.
Terrestrial Biological Resources	All proposed project activities would occur in the marine environment and would not impact terrestrial biological resources.
Socioeconomic and Environmental Justice	Implementation of the proposed project would not affect, beneficially or adversely, socioeconomic resources, environmental justice, or the protection of children. No changes in the population or additional need for housing or schools would occur; human activities in the area around the survey vessel would be limited to commercial fishing activities and at most minor interaction with recreational fishing; however, because of the distance from local ports, short duration of the proposed activities (<1 month), and survey design, interaction with fishing activity is expected to be very limited in the Study Area. Further description about potential impacts to fishing are described in this document. No other socioeconomic impacts would be anticipated as result of the proposed activities.
Visual Resources	No visual resources would be anticipated to be negatively impacted as the area of operation is significantly outside of the land and coastal view shed.

Cultural Resources	There are no known cultural resources in the proposed project area. Therefore, no impacts to cultural resources would be anticipated.

1.7 ASSESSMENT METHODOLOGY

1.7.1 Identification of Valued Environmental Components

The scoping process identified a focused list of environmental components. Scoping considerations for these components are presented in Table 3 along with the rationale for inclusion or exclusion of an environmental factor for further evaluation.

Table 3: Selection of Environmental and Socio-economic Components

Environmental Component	Scoping Considerations
Air Quality	Compliance with US Coast Guard regulations, American Bureau of Shipping Certification, and best vessel-operational practices
Marine Water Quality	Compliance with US Coast Guard regulations, American Bureau of Shipping Certification, and best vessel-operational practices
Marine Benthos	The BOEM PEIS (2012) showed that lack of groundfish or shellfish commercial fisheries in the Study Area. Coral and sponge protected areas occur in the Study Area.
Marine Fish	Spawning activity may be affected by seismic operations. Vessel and airgun noise may affect fish behavior by causing fish to avoid areas of vessel travel and/or by causing a 'startle response'. Fish spawning has been included as an environmental factor.
Marine Mammals	Several species of marine mammals are likely to be present in the Study Area year-round and could potentially be affected by Project noise and vessel traffic. Marine mammals of particular concern (ESA-listed) would be assessed.
Sea Turtles	An assessment of the potential adverse environmental effects on ESA-listed sea turtle species would be undertaken.
Marine Birds	An assessment of the potential adverse environmental effects on ESA-listed seabird species would be undertaken.

Environmental Component	Scoping Considerations
Special Areas	The project is situated adjacent to several marine protected areas, but does not encroach into any of them.
Commercial Fisheries	The commercial fishery is an important element in the US eastern seaboard socio-economic environments. Although unlikely, seismic operations could interact with commercial fisheries directly and indirectly (*i.e.*, potential effects on fish). The assessment would address commercial fisheries occurring within the Study Area.
Military Operations or Research Surveys	Other resources users (*e.g.,* Department of Defense, seismic research, *etc*.) conduct activities on the OCS and Slope within the Study Area, thereby potentially interacting with the project. Various research surveys are conducted within the Study Area that may interact with project activities and are included in the assessment of other ocean users.

1.7.2 Description of Existing Conditions

Section 3 of this report provides a description of the existing conditions (i.e., pre-project) for each environmental or socio-economic factor. The description is focused on the status and characteristics of the environmental or socio-economic factors within the boundaries established for the assessment and focuses on aspects that are relevant to potential project interactions. In some cases, baseline data are only available on a larger regional basis extending beyond the boundaries of the assessment, but are still considered relevant and appropriate for the purposes of the assessment.

1.7.3 Study Area

The Study Area encompasses the region over which the 2D seismic survey extends and a 30 km estimated distance to account for a turning radius and distances (<6 km) at which the acoustic level (160 dB re 1 μPa SPL) from the 2D seismic airgun survey may affect the behavior of marine species. This area also includes potential interactions with other vessels.

1.7.4 Temporal, Spatial and Ecological Boundaries and Study Area

Temporal and spatial boundaries encompass those periods during, and areas within which, the environmental or socio-economic factors are likely to interact with or be influenced by the project.

The temporal boundaries considered for this assessment include seismic activities from the time the vessel arrives within the Study Area, until it departs the Study Area, and estimated time frames for recovery of pelagic and nektonic communities. Effects of the routine activities associated with the proposed project have been assessed from August to September in 2014 and April to August 2015.

Spatial boundaries encompass those periods during, and areas within which, the environmental or socio-economic factors are likely to interact with, or be influenced by, the project.

Ecological boundaries are determined by the spatial and temporal distributions of the biophysical environmental factors under consideration. Factors such as population characteristics and migration patterns are important considerations in determining ecological boundaries, and may influence the extent and distribution of an environmental effect. Spatial socio-economic boundaries are determined by the nature of the environmental factors under consideration (e.g., the spatial distribution of fishing activity). Such boundaries are particularly important for assessing cumulative environmental effects.

Temporal ecological boundaries consider the relevant characteristics of environmental components or populations, including the natural variation of a population or ecological component, response and recovery times to effects, and any sensitive or critical periods of an environmental factor's life cycle (e.g., spawning, migration), where applicable.

The scope of the proposed project includes all of the components and activities detailed in this section of this report, including any potential accidental events that may occur in relation to the project. To further focus the assessment, the interactions between survey activities and the environmental factors need to be identified (Table 4). A potential interaction, signified by an "X", does not necessarily indicate a predicted effect, but warrants further analysis in the EA. A full assessment of these interactions is contained in Section 4 (planned routine events and accidental events). Where appropriate, the assessment includes a summary of main concerns regarding the effect of each survey activity on the environmental factors being considered. Knowledge may exist in the scientific literature and is referred to where possible. Negligible interactions are blank and are not discussed further. An interaction may be negligible due to the limited nature of the activity and interaction, strict regulations, or lack of sensitive receptors.

Table 4: Potential Project - Environment Interaction Matrix

Environmental/ Socio-economic Factors	**Marine Mammals**	**Sea Turtles**	**Marine Fish**	**Marine and Migratory Birds**	**Special Areas**	**Commercial Fisheries**	**Marine Traffic**	**Military Operations**
2D Seismic Survey - Noise Emissions (Acoustic Array)	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Vessel Presence	X	X		X		X	X	X
Presence of Streamers and Cables	X	X				X	X	X
Routine Vessel Discharges	X	X	X	X	X	X		

1.7.5 Analysis, Mitigation and Environmental Effects

For each environmental or socio-economic factor, the potential interactions are investigated and described based on current scientific knowledge with regard to each interaction. .

Where applicable, operational mitigation measures are identified that would minimize identified impacts.

Additionally, pre-cruise planning mitigation measures included evaluating the minimum source level needed for the proposed research and considering environmental conditions such as the seasonal presence of marine mammals, sea turtles, and seabirds when scheduling the survey.

1.8 FOLLOW-UP AND MONITORING

Monitoring by the proponent may be undertaken for a number of reasons including compliance, permit approval/renewal, evaluation of mitigating measures, strengthening predictive capacity in future EAs, and commitments to third parties.

Monitoring and follow-up requirements are evaluated for each environmental or socio-economic factor and are linked to the sensitivity of an environmental or socio-economic factor to both project related and cumulative environmental effects.

1.9 CUMULATIVE ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS ASSESSMENT

Individual environmental effects could accumulate and interact to result in cumulative environmental effects. Past and ongoing human activities have affected the region's natural and human environments. An environmental assessment must include consideration of the "cumulative environmental effects that are likely to result from the project in combination with other projects or activities that have been or would be carried out." A critical step in the environmental assessment, therefore, is determining what other projects or activities have reached a level of certainty (e.g., "would be carried out") such that they must be considered in an environmental assessment.

Certain requirements must be met to consider cumulative environmental effects:

- there must be a measurable environmental effect of the project being proposed;
- the environmental effect must be demonstrated to interact cumulatively with the environmental effects from other projects or activities; and
- it must be known that the other projects or activities have been, or would be, carried out and are not hypothetical.

These criteria were used to guide the assessment of cumulative environmental effects. The other projects and activities considered in this assessment include those that are likely to proceed (such as those listed in the Federal Registry), and those which have been issued permits, licenses, leases or other forms of approval.

Past and present activities that may impact cumulatively with the project have been assessed as part of the assessment of routine project activities in Section 5. Future activities that have the potential to interact cumulatively with the project include:

- marine traffic (domestic and international);
- military activity;
- submarine cable installations;
- commercial fishing activities; and
- research surveys.

2 PROPOSED ACTION AND ALTERNATIVES

2.1 PROJECT OVERVIEW

USGS proposes to conduct an offshore regional 2D seismic reflection survey program, totaling 3,400 nm (6,300 km) on the Outer Continental Shelf, slope and abyssal plain over the next two years (2014 and 2015). Figure 3 depicts all the proposed survey lines. No survey lines would enter the waters within 12 nm territorial waters of the United States nor water shallower than 1,000 m.

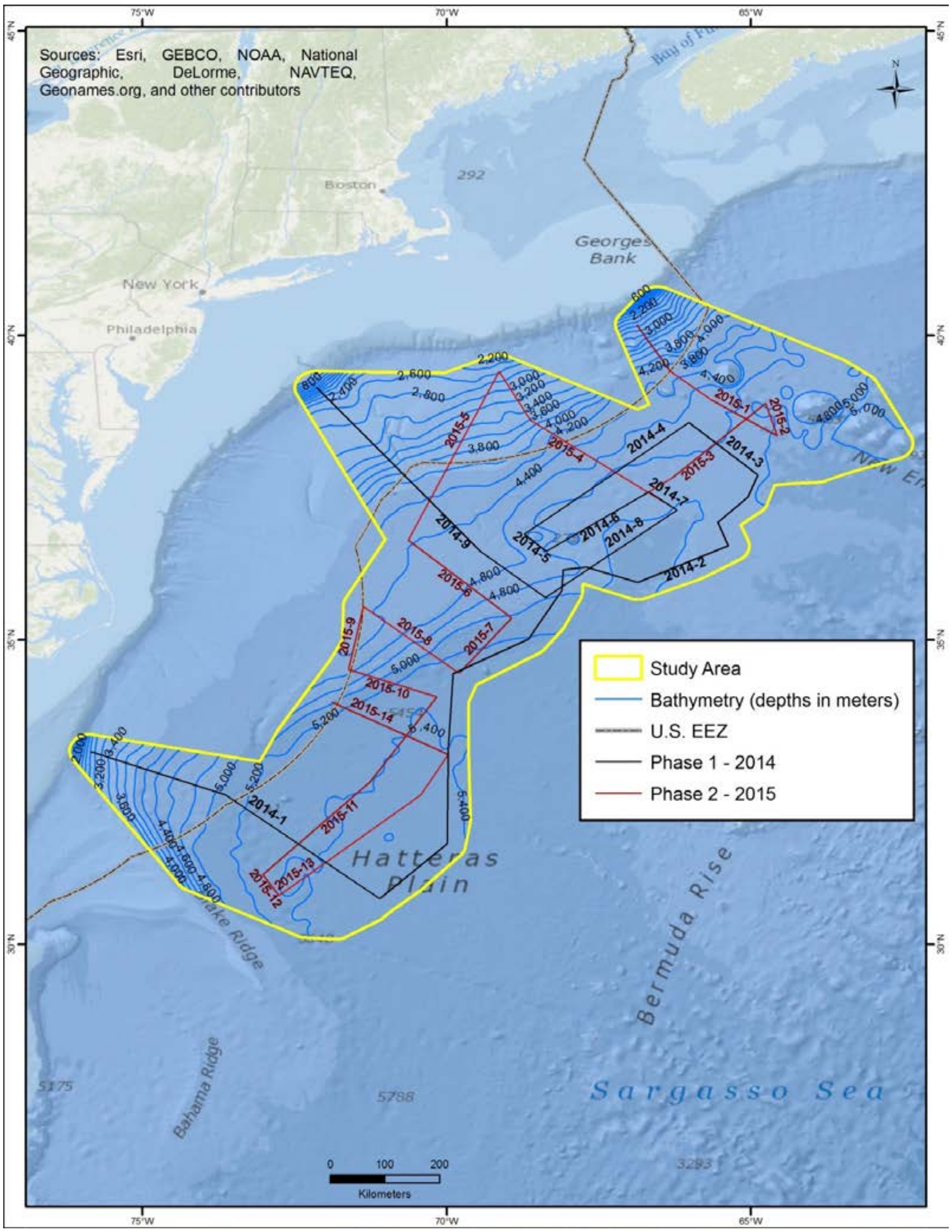


Figure 3: 2D Seismic Lines (2014 and 2015)

The survey in 2014 is proposed for August 16 to September 6. The exact dates of the second survey would depend on the weather conditions, budget and vessel availability; the time period to conduct the survey would likely be proposed sometime between April and August, 2015. Each program would be about 18 days in duration, including transit, equipment mobilization and retrieval.

The vessel would be at sea and operate continuously (i.e., 24-hour operations) during survey operations. There would no crew changes planned and no additional support vessel or helicopter service anticipated.

To address environmental mitigations for the planned scientific research surveys, Protected Species Observers (PSVO's) would form a component of the operational crew. Standard mitigation procedures would be implemented to minimize effects on the local marine ecosystem.

2.2 PROJECT LOCATION

The proposed survey area would be bounded by the following geographic coordinates:

Table 5: Geographic Location of Survey

40.5694° N / -66.5324° W
38.5808° N / -61.7105° W
29.2456° N / -72.6766° W
33.1752° N / -75.8697° W
39.1583° N / -72.8697° W

These coordinates define an area where the most easterly survey lines are outside the US EEZ, and extend into international waters. No survey lines extend into the United States 12 nautical mile (nm) limit for territorial seas and State waters.

The nearest-to-land extent is in the northwest (39N, 73W) approximately 130 nm (241 km) from shore. Similarly, in the southwestern end of the Study Area (33N, -76W), the nearest-to-land extent is about 155 nm (290 km) from shore.

2.3 PROJECT COMPONENTS

The USGS plans to conduct seismic reflection scientific research surveys off the US eastern seaboard in 2014 and 2015. Each survey would consist of an approximate 18-day leg comprising 1,700 nautical trackline miles (3,600 km) of 2D seismic reflection coverage (total 3,400 nm total over two years). The 2014 survey is currently scheduled to commence in mid-August 2014; the second survey would be conducted in the April 1 to August 31, 2015 time window.

The proposed survey design consists of approximately nine (9) sub-parallel, NW-SE lines (perpendicular to the margin) across the Study Area, with end-line transits and several NE to SW tie or strike lines. The airgun array would operate continuously during the survey, except for power/shut downs, equipment repair or weather issues. Data would continue to be acquired between line changes.

Marine seismic surveys for scientific research use arrays of airguns as the source of seismic signals. All conventional seismic surveys share the same basic concept. Seismic airgun sources send sound waves through the water, and formations beneath the seafloor reflect the sound waves back to hydrophone streamers trailing behind the vessel. The components of the 2D survey would include a seismic vessel, the source towed array (consisting of 36 airguns) and the receiver (hydrophone streamer). These components are shown in Figure 4.

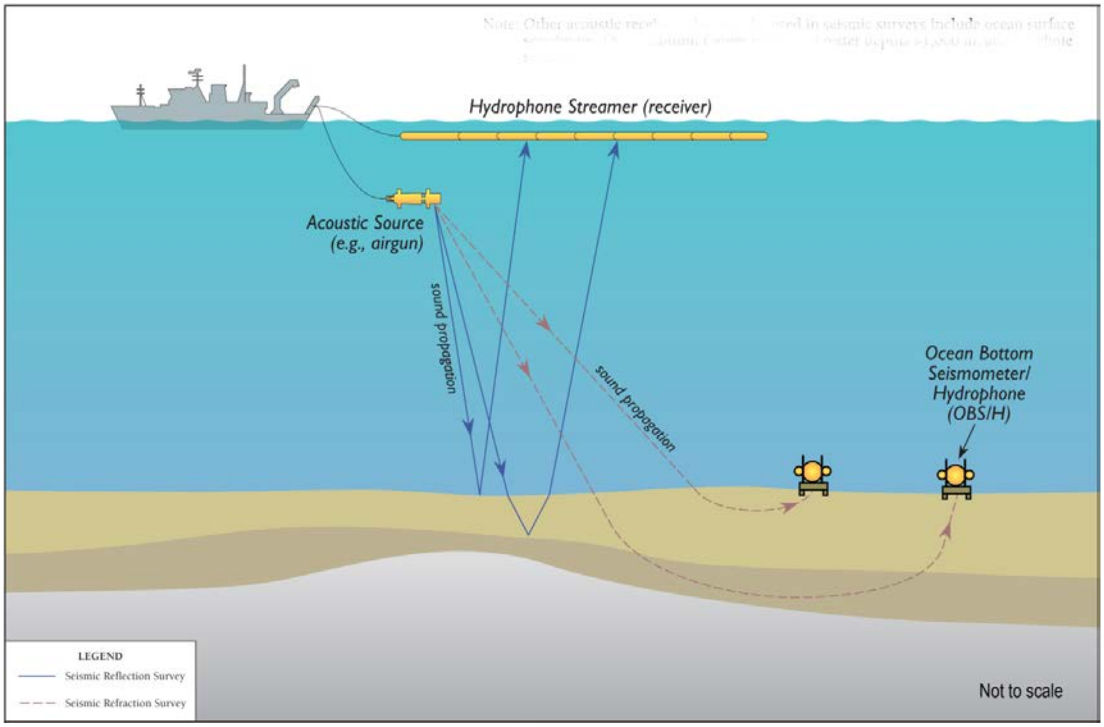


Figure 4: Seismic vessel and towed system (Source NSF/USGS PEIS)

2.3.1 Seismic Vessel

The *Langseth* (Figure 5), owned by the National Science Foundation and operated by Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia University would be used as the seismic survey vessel.

Figure 5: Survey Vessel *R/V Marcus G. Langseth*

The *Langseth* was designed as a seismic research vessel, with a propulsion system designed to be as quiet as possible to avoid interference with the seismic signals. The operation speed during seismic acquisition is typically 7.8 to 8.3 km/h (4.2 to 4.5 knots). When not towing seismic survey gear, the *Langseth* can cruise at 20 to 24 km/h (11 to 12 knots). The *Langseth* would tow the 36-airgun array along predetermined lines (see Figure 3). When the *Langseth* is towing the airgun array and the hydrophone streamer, the turning rate of the vessel is limited to five degrees per minute. Thus, the maneuverability of the vessel is limited during operations with the streamer.

The vessel would have equipment, systems, and protocols in place for prevention of pollution by oil, sewage, and garbage in accordance with international standards and certification authorities. The survey vessel would comply with all applicable regulations concerning management of waste and discharges of materials into the marine environment. The vessel has a ballast water management plan. The International Maritime Organization (IMO; http://www.imo.org/) is the United Nations specialized agency with responsibility for the safety of shipping and the prevention of marine pollution by ships. The Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan (SOPEP) is written in accordance with the requirements of regulation 37 in compliance with latest revision of MARPOL Annex I of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973. The SOPEP is a guide to the vessel Masters, bridge officers and crew onboard the ship with respect to the steps to be taken when an oil pollution incident has occurred, or is likely to occur.

The *Langseth* would also serve as the platform from which vessel-based Protected Species Visual Observers (PSVO's) would be responsible for visually monitoring, data collection and reporting on marine mammals and sea turtles before and during airgun operations. Resources onboard include two sets of big eyes and handheld binoculars to scan the surrounding area for all protected species plus Passive Acoustic Monitoring (PAM) system would also be monitored 24 hours a day during seismic operations by experienced PAM Operators. The PAM system would consist of a data processing unit, deck cable, hydrophone cable, computers, headphones, and special translation software to listen and read vocalizations of marine mammals under the water.

The *Langseth* has been used to conduct seismic surveys world-wide since 2008. Environmental assessments, IHA's and post-cruise reports environmental impact can be found for more than a dozen *Langseth* cruises at:

http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/incidental.htm#applications or http://www.nsf.gov/geo/oce/envcomp/index.jsp.

2.3.2 2D Seismic Towed Array and Hydrophone Streamer

Survey equipment for the program is described below in Table 6.

Table 6: Seismic Equipment and Survey Parameters

Total Linear Length of Lines (km)	3,400 nm (6,300 km) two year program, 1,700 nm per year
Number and Length of Streamers	1 X 8 km multi-channel, Thompson-Marconi SENTRY solid streamer
Group Interval	12 groups per section; 12.5 m
Airgun Array	36 guns of Bolt 1500LL and Bolt 1900LLX 6,600 cu. in. total volume
Maximum number of sub-arrays	4, 10 guns per sub-array (1 spare)
Source Array Tow Depth	9 m
Airgun Operating Pressure	2000 psi
Frequency	2 to188 Hz
Source output	zero to peak (0-p) 84 bar-m (259 dB re 1 μPa m); peak to peak is 177 bar m (265 dB)
Hydrophone	Dual sensor
Type of firing sensors	Pressure activated
Firing duration	0.01 s
Shot Time Interval	50 m or ~22 to 23 s

Recording Time	14 to 16 seconds
Vessel Speed	4.2 to 4.5 knots while surveying, 10 knots in transit
Turning Radius	10 to 12 km

2.3.3 Multibeam Echosounder and Sub-bottom Profiler

Along with the airgun operations, two additional acoustical data acquisition systems would be operated during the survey. The ocean floor would be mapped with the Kongsberg EM 122 multi-beam sounder (MBES) and a Knudsen Chirp 3260 sub-bottom profiler (SBP). These sound sources would be operated from the *Langseth* continuously throughout the cruise (exclusive of transits).

The Kongsberg EM 122 MBES operates at 10.5 to 13 (usually 12) kHz and is hull-mounted on the *Langseth*. The transmitting beam width is 1° or 2° fore–aft and 150° athwartship. The maximum source level is 242 dB re 1 µPa m. Each ping consists of eight (in water >1000 m deep) or four (<1000 m) successive fan-shaped transmissions, each ensonifying a sector that extends 1° fore–aft. Continuous wave (CW) pulses increase from 2 to 15 ms long in water depths up to 2,600 m, and Frequency Modulation (FM) chirp pulses up to 100 ms long are used in water >2,600 m. The successive transmissions span an overall cross-track angular extent of about 150°, with 2-ms gaps between the pulses for successive sectors.

The Knudsen Chirp 3260 SBP is normally operated to provide information about the sedimentary features and the bottom topography that is being mapped simultaneously by the MBES. The SBP is capable of reaching water depths of 10,000 m and penetrating tens of meters into the sediments. The beam is transmitted as a 27º cone, which is directed downward by a 3.5 kHz transducer in the hull of the *Langseth*. The nominal power output is 10 kW, but the actual maximum radiated power is 3 kW or 222 dB re 1 µPa m. The ping duration is up to 64 ms, and the ping interval is dependent on water depth, between 3 and 6 seconds.

MONITORING AND MITIGATION MEASURES

Table 7 summarizes the key monitoring and mitigation measures that would be followed during the proposed activity.

Table 7: Summary of Key Monitoring and Mitigation Measures

Pre-Cruise Planning Measures:
- Survey Timing: Consider environmental conditions (i.e., seasonal presence of marine species, weather, equipment and personnel availability - Energy Source: Evaluate research objectives and optimize source selection

- Mitigation Zones: Calculate mitigation zones based on LDEO modeling and current NMFS acoustic threshold guidance
Operational Measures
- Protected Species Visual Observers PSVO monitoring, documentation, and reporting - Passive Acoustic Monitoring - Speed/course alteration - Airgun power/shut downs - Airgun ramp-up procedures
Marine Mammal Species
- PSVO's would be based aboard the seismic source vessel, and would watch for marine species during daylight (civil dawn to civil twilight) airgun operations - Five PSVO's would be deployed aboard *Langseth*. Two PSVO's would remain on watch during daytime seismic operations; at least one PSVO would be on watch during meal and restroom breaks. PSVO watch shifts would not exceed 4 hours. - PSVO's would watch for marine mammals and turtles near the seismic vessel for at least 30 minutes (min) prior to the start of airgun operations after any total airgun shutdown - Based on PSVO observations, airguns would be powered down (see below) or, if necessary, shut down completely when marine mammals are observed within or about to enter a designated Exclusion Zone (EZ). Establishment of the EZ is based on consideration of criterion of ≥180 dB re 1 µPa rms - PSVO's monitor for species to the Full Mitigation Zone (FMZ) which includes the area identified for potential behavioral harassment (Level B harassment). FMZ represents the distance at which the SPL is >160 dB re 1µPa rms - PSVO's would make observations during daytime periods when the seismic systems are not operating for comparison of animal abundance and behavior during seismic and non-seismic periods for similar geographic regions - Passive Acoustic Monitoring (PAM) would be used during seismic operations in conjunction with visual monitoring. PAM would be monitored continuously during seismic operations by a specialized PAM operator or PSVO, in shifts of no greater than 6 hours duration. - Shutdown of airguns for marine mammals and sea turtles detected inside of Exclusion Zone. Unless the marine mammal or sea turtle is observed to leave Exclusion Zone, ramp up (procedure described below) would commence 15 minutes for small cetaceans or 30 minutes for large cetaceans after the last sighting
General Ship Operations
Speed or course alteration. If a marine mammal or turtle is detected outside the EZ but is likely to enter it based on relative movement of the vessel and the animal, if safety of operations allow, the vessel speed and/or course would be adjusted to minimize the likelihood of the animal entering the EZ. It should be noted that major course and speed adjustments may be impractical when towing long

seismic streamers.
Power down procedures. A power down involves reducing the number of airguns operating to a single 40 in^3 ("mitigation") airgun in order to minimize the size of the EZ. The continued operation of one airgun is intended to alert marine mammals and turtles to the presence of the seismic vessel nearby. If a marine mammal or turtle is detected within, or is likely to enter the EZ of the array in use, and if vessel course/speed changes are impractical or would not be effective to prevent the animal from entering the EZ, then the array would be powered down to ensure the animal remains outside the smaller EZ of the single airgun. If the animal appears on course to enter the EZ of the single mitigation airgun, then a total shutdown would be required, as described below. Following a power down, airgun activity would not resume until the marine mammal or turtle is outside the EZ for the full array. The animal would be considered to have cleared the EZ if it: - is visually observed to have left the EZ; - has not been observed within the EZ for 15 min in the case of small odontocetes; - has not been observed within the EZ for 30 min in the case of mysticetes and large odontocetes, including sperm, pygmy sperm, dwarf sperm, and beaked whales; or - the vessel has moved outside the applicable EZ in which the animal in question was last seen. Following a power down and subsequent animal departure as noted above, the airgun array would resume operations following ramp-up procedures described below.
Shutdown procedures. If a marine mammal or sea turtle is within or about to enter the EZ for a single airgun, or for a single airgun following a power down, all operational airguns would be shut down immediately. Airgun activity would not resume until the animal had cleared the EZ for the full array of airguns to be used, as described above.
Ramp-up procedures. A ramp-up procedure would be followed when an airgun array begins operating after a specified period without operations. The period varies depending on the speed of the source vessel and the size of the airgun array being used. The specified period is defined as the time taken for the source vessel to travel the radius of the EZ specified for the array to be used; for this survey the period would be approximately 7 minutes. Ramp-up would begin with the smallest airgun in the array. Airguns would be added in a sequence such that the source level of the array would increase in steps not exceeding 6 dB per 5-min period. A 36-airgun array would take approximately 30 min to achieve full operation via ramp-up. During ramp-up, the PSVO's would monitor the EZ, and if marine mammals or turtles are sighted, decisions about course/speed changes, power down, and shutdown would be implemented as though the full array were operational. Initiation of ramp-up procedures from shutdown requires that the full EZ must be visible by the PSVO's for 30 min, whether conducted in daytime or nighttime. This requirement would often preclude startups under nighttime or poor-visibility conditions except for small sources with restricted EZs. Ramp-up is allowed from a power down under reduced visibility conditions if the single mitigation airgun has been operating continuously during the power-down period. It is assumed that the single airgun would alert marine mammals and turtles to the approaching seismic vessel, allowing them to avoid the seismic source. Ramp-up procedures would not be initiated if a marine mammal or turtle is observed within the EZ of the airgun array to be operated.

Special mitigation measures: airgun arrays would be shut down (not just powered down) if N Atlantic right whale is sighted from the vessel, even if outside the EZ, due to their rarity and conservation status. In case of confirmed sightings, airgun operations would not resume until 30 min after the last documented visual sighting and the PSVO is confident that the whale is no longer in the vicinity of the vessel.
US Notice to Mariners, Safety Information

Section 2.4.1.1 of the NSF/UGSG PEIS details standard monitoring and mitigation for NSF and USGS marine seismic surveys. With the proposed monitoring and mitigation provisions, potential effects on most if not all individuals are expected to be limited to minor behavioral disturbance. Those potential effects are expected to have negligible impacts both on individual marine mammals and on the associated species and stocks. To minimize the likelihood that impacts would occur to the species and stocks, sound source operations would be conducted in accordance with all applicable U.S. federal regulations and IHA requirements. The proposed mitigation procedures to be followed are based on NSF/USGS PEIS protocols used during previous L-DEO seismic research surveys based on best practices recommended in Richardson et al (1995), Pierson et al. (1998), and Weir and Dolman (2007) and/or required under NMFS-issued IHA's.

The standard operational monitoring and mitigation strategies would include:

- Visual monitoring by PSVO's
- Passive acoustic monitoring
- PSVO Report submitted to NMFS within 90 days after the end of the cruise
- Proposed safety Exclusion Zones based on acoustic modeling
- Operational Mitigation
    - Ramp-up procedures
    - Power-down procedures
    - Shut-down procedures
    - Vessel course/speed alteration

In addition to operational mitigation measures, measures to mitigate potential impacts were also considered during survey planning. The USGS worked with L-DEO and NSF to identify potential time periods to carry out the survey, taking into consideration key factors such as environmental conditions (i.e., the seasonal presence of marine mammals, sea turtles, and seabirds), weather conditions, equipment, and optimal timing for other proposed seismic surveys using the *Langseth*. Most marine mammal species are expected to occur in the area year-round, however, so altering the timing of the proposed project likely would result in no net benefits for those species.

The USGS proposes to use the standard *Langseth* 36-airgun array with a total volume of approximately 6,600 in3. This tuned array features spectral content and power appropriate for the objectives of the survey. The 6,600 in^3 array would be required to image full sediment thickness back to the upper continental rise. Given the research goals, location of the survey and associated deep water, this energy source level was deemed appropriate.

2.4 ALTERNATIVES TO THE PROJECT

Two alternatives were evaluated:

1) "No Action" alternative.

2) A corresponding seismic survey at an alternative time, along with issuance of an associated IHA, and

2.4.1 No Action

An alternative to the proposed seismic surveys is the No Action Alternative, i.e., do not issue an IHA and do not conduct the research operations. If the research was not conducted, the "No Action" alternative would result in no disturbance to the environment, including marine species, due to the proposed activities.

A No Action Alternative would preclude the establishment of outer limit points using the sediment thickness criteria, and would jeopardize the ability of the U.S. to define the seafloor and subseafloor where it is entitled to certain sovereign rights, such as managing, exploring or conserving the region. The USGS has examined the existing seismic reflection data in the area of interest, and determined that the current coverage is entirely insufficient in both extent and quality to meet the criteria required by Article 76.

The goal of the proposed research would be achieved using the *Langseth*. The No Action Alternative could also, in some circumstances, result in delay of other studies that would be planned on the *Langseth* for 2014 and beyond, depending on the timing of the decision. .

2.4.2 Alternative Action

An alternative to issuing the IHA for the period requested and to conducting the project then is to issue the IHA for another time and to conduct the project with the same monitoring and mitigation measures at that alternative time. With respect to the technology proposed, compressed air source arrays are the most common, environmentally responsible and practical energy sources for marine geophysical surveys. Noise pulses with high peak levels are produced; however, each pulse is short, limiting the duration of the total energy released. Lower-power sources (such as sparker or Chirp) do not have sufficient capacity to penetrate the entire sediment column, which in the Atlantic may be as great as several kilometers. The compressed air array proposed for the current survey uses a proven technology and program design that is standard throughout the world. More than 30 countries have established ECS limits using sediment thickness, and all have based those limits on seismic reflection data acquired with compressed air sources.

3 AFFECTED ENVIRONMENTS

This section covers the primary environments that would be effected by the proposed action. A number of environments were identified in section 1.6.1 as not requiring further analysis and are not covered here.

3.1 METOCEAN DATA

The proposed Study Area is solely in offshore mid-Atlantic waters. Bathymetry ranges between 1,450 m and drops to abyssal depths of 5,400 m. The majority of the proposed project occurs at depths below 3,500 m (Figure 6).

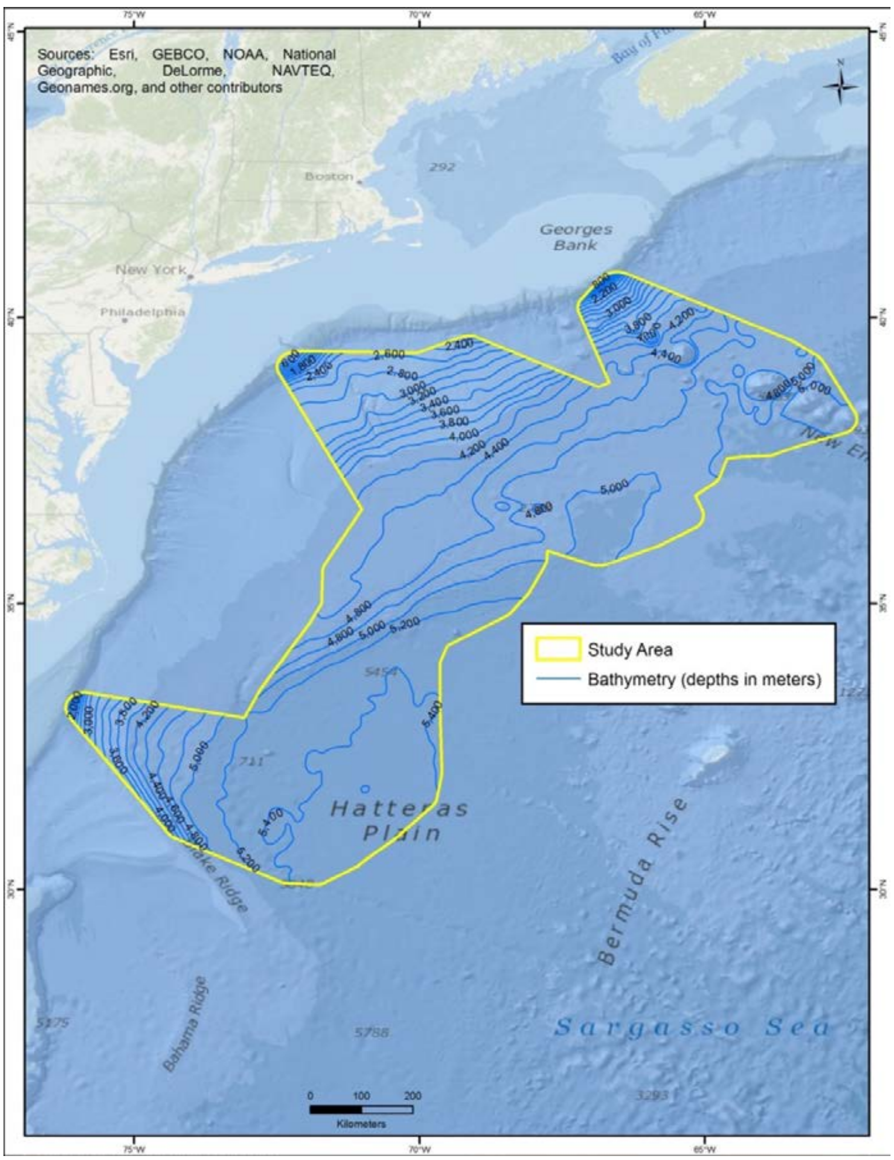


Figure 6: Study Area with Bathymetry

The Study Area is situated well east of the Mid-Atlantic Bight (MAB), a 621 mi (1,000 km) coastal region running from Massachusetts to North Carolina. The western edge of the Study Area lies at the base of the continental shelf-slope and is east of physiographical features such as the Baltimore Canyon, Washington Canyon, and Norfolk Canyon, and northeast of features such as the Blake Ridge.

The region is greatly influenced by a prominent ocean current system, the Gulf Stream. This is a powerful, warm, and swiftly flowing current that flows northward, generally along the shelf edge, carrying warm equatorial waters into the North Atlantic (Pickard and Emery, 1990; Verity et al., 1993) (Figure 7). Upwelling along the Atlantic coast is both wind-driven and a result of dynamic uplift (Shen et al., 2000; Lentz et al., 2003).

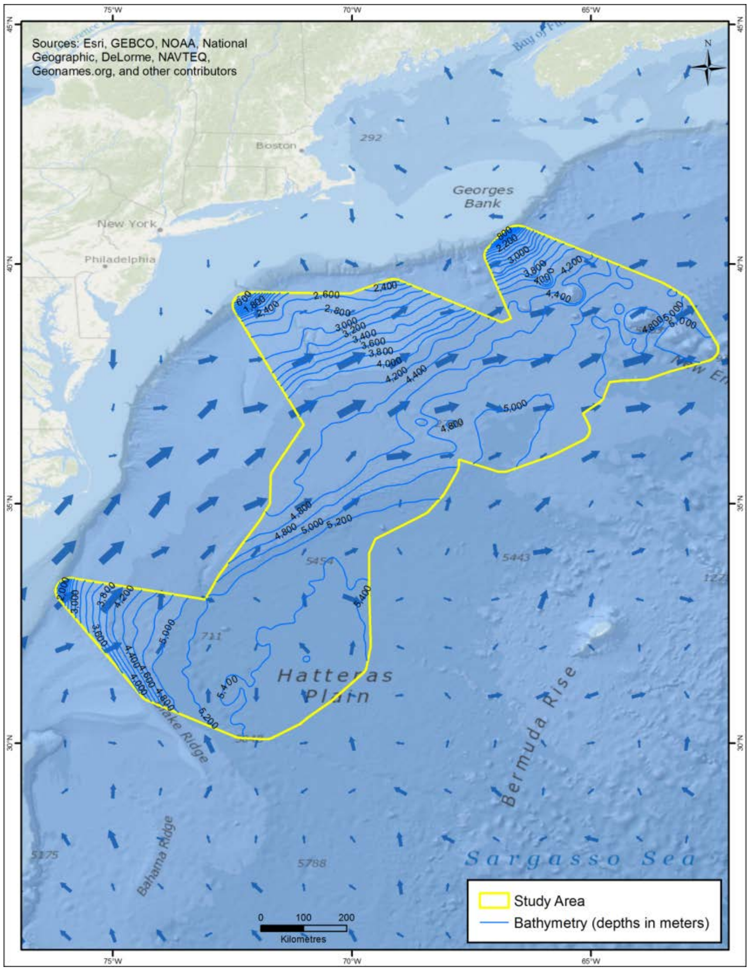


Figure 7: Gulf Stream

In addition to the Gulf Stream, currents originating from the outflow of both the Chesapeake and Delaware Bays influence the surface circulation in the MAB. The Chesapeake Bay plume flows seaward from the mouth of the Bay and then turns south to form a coastal jet that can extend as far as Cape Hatteras. Similarly, the Delaware Coastal Current begins in Delaware Bay and flows southward along the Delmarva Peninsula before entrained into the Chesapeake Bay plume.

The climate for the Study Area is of a typical marine environment. It is influenced to varying degrees year–round by passing systems, prevailing winds, and warm Gulf Stream waters. Of considerable influence, are three atmospheric pressure systems that control the wind patterns and climate for this region: The Bermuda-Azores High, the Icelandic Low, and the Ohio Valley High (Blanton et al., 1985). The Bermuda-Azores High dominates the climate in the region from approximately May through August, and produces south-easterly winds of <6m/s (<20ft/s) (BOEM, 2012a). Persistent high levels of humidity and moisture during this time reduces visibility, increases precipitation levels, and increases levels of fog.

The proposed Study Area is susceptible to tropical and sub-tropical cyclones, which can greatly influence the weather and sea state. During the summer and fall, tropical cyclones are severe, but infrequent (BOEM 2012a). In contrast, during the winter and spring, extra-tropical cyclones frequent the area. Most storms, including hurricanes occur during the North Atlantic hurricane season, which occurs from June through November.

3.2 GEOLOGY AND SEDIMENTOLOGY AND SEDIMENTARY BASINS

Appendix F, Section 1.2 of BOEM (2012a) provides information on geological history and sedimentary basins for the general area. As such, the information is pertinent for this proposed action. Small portions of this Study Area lie within the Carolina Trough, the Baltimore Canyon Trough, and the Georges Bank Basin.

Appendix F, Section 1.3 of BOEM (2012a) provides a summary of the seafloor sediments found in this project Study Area, along with adjacent sediment structures. The western edge of the Study Area is situated within the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, at the base of the Continental Slope and extends eastwards. Slope sediments are highly variable, consisting mainly of sandy silts on the upper slope and silts and clays on the lower slope (McGregor, 1983). Fine-grained biogenic calcareous sediments predominate seaward of the 9,843-ft isobath (3,000m) (Amato 1994).

3.3 UNDERWATER SOUND ENVIRONMENT

Section 3.1 and 3.1.2 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011) provides a full description of ambient underwater sound and factors affecting sound propagation. Underwater sound is generated by many sources, and in the uppermost part of the ocean, weather can contribute to increased sound in the oceans at certain frequencies. Ambient sound is made up of contributions from many sources, both natural and anthropogenic. These sounds combine to give the continuum of noise against which all acoustic receivers have to detect required signals. Ambient sound is generally made up of three constituent types – wideband continuous sound, tonals and impulsive sound and covers the whole acoustic spectrum from below 1 Hz to well over 100 kHz. Above this frequency the ambient sound level drops below thermal sound levels.

3.4 PROTECTED AREAS

No marine protected areas (MPAs) (existing or proposed) are located within the proposed Study Area. Within US Atlantic waters, six MPAs exist and one is proposed. The closest proximity of the Study Area to the Bermuda Whale Sanctuary is 43 km at the most eastern boundary of the Study Area (Figure 9).

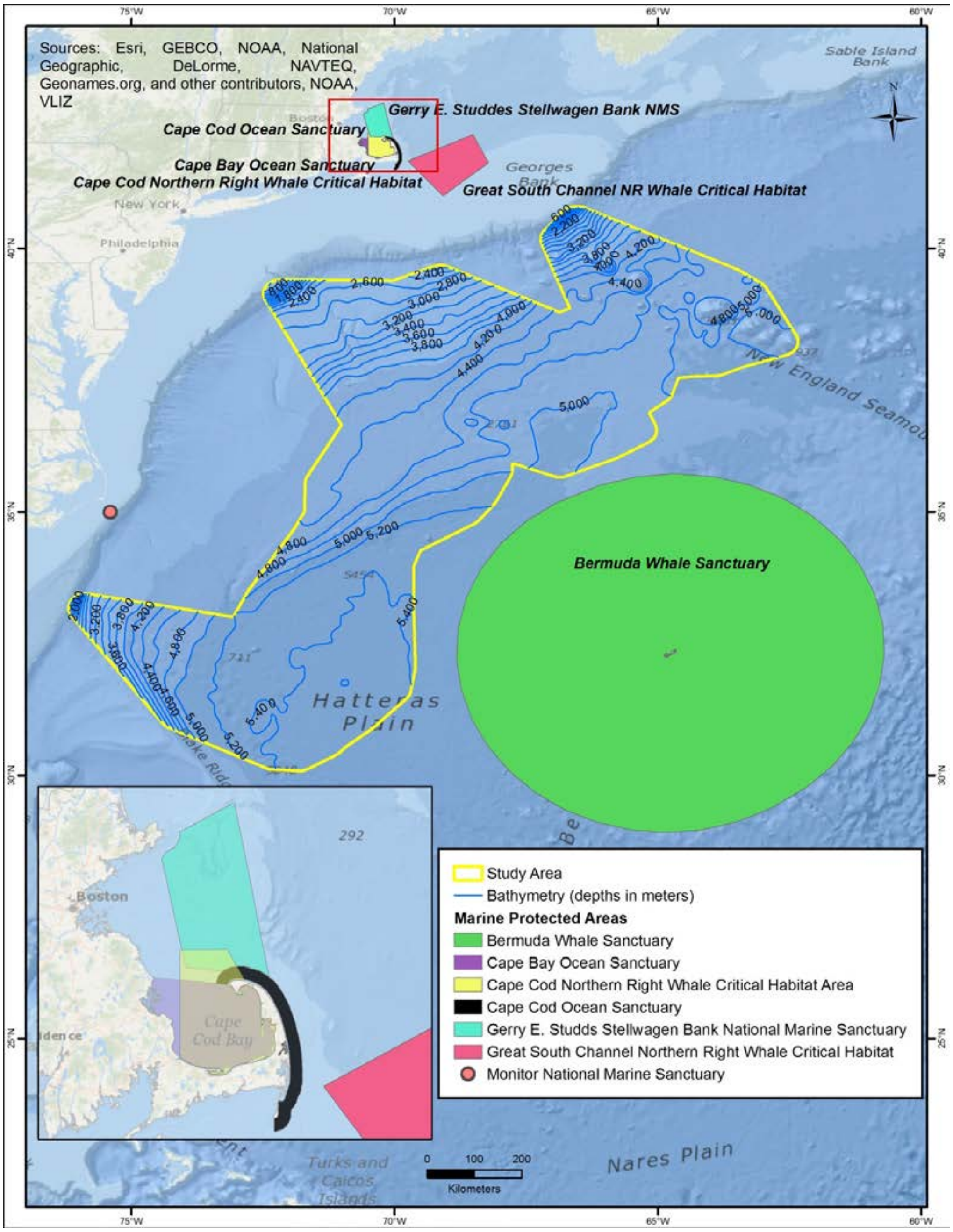


Figure 8: Marine Protected Areas and the Proposed Study Area

3.5 MARINE MAMMALS

Forty-four species of marine mammals, including 27 odontocetes, 7 mysticetes, and 7 pinnipeds, are known to occur in the North Atlantic Ocean. Of those, 34 cetacean species (7 mysticetes and 27 odontocetes) could occur near the proposed Study Area. Pinnipeds are not recorded to occur in the proposed Study Area. Six of the 34 cetacean species that are listed under the U.S. Endangered Species Act (ESA) as endangered are the sei, blue, fin, North Atlantic right, humpback, and sperm whales.

Table 2 summarizes the habitat, regional abundance, distribution, and conservation status of these marine mammals. General information on the taxonomy, ecology, distribution and movements, and acoustic capabilities of mysticetes and odontocetes are given in Section 3.6.1 and Section 3.7.1, respectively, of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011). The general distribution of mysticetes and odontocetes in the North Atlantic and on the Mid-Atlantic Region (MAR) is discussed in Sections 3.6.3.4 and 3.7.3.4 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011), respectively. Figure 9 and Figure 10 illustrate the observations of baleen whales relative to the Study Area. Figure 11 shows the observations of North Atlantic right whale habitats adjacent to the Study Area. Figure 12 and Figure 13 show observations of odontocete whales, and Figure 14 and Figure 15 show location of dolphins and porpoise.

The rest of this section deals specifically with species distribution near the proposed Study Area. The main source of information used here is the Ocean Biogeographic Information System (OBIS) database hosted by Rutgers and Duke University (Read et al. 2009).

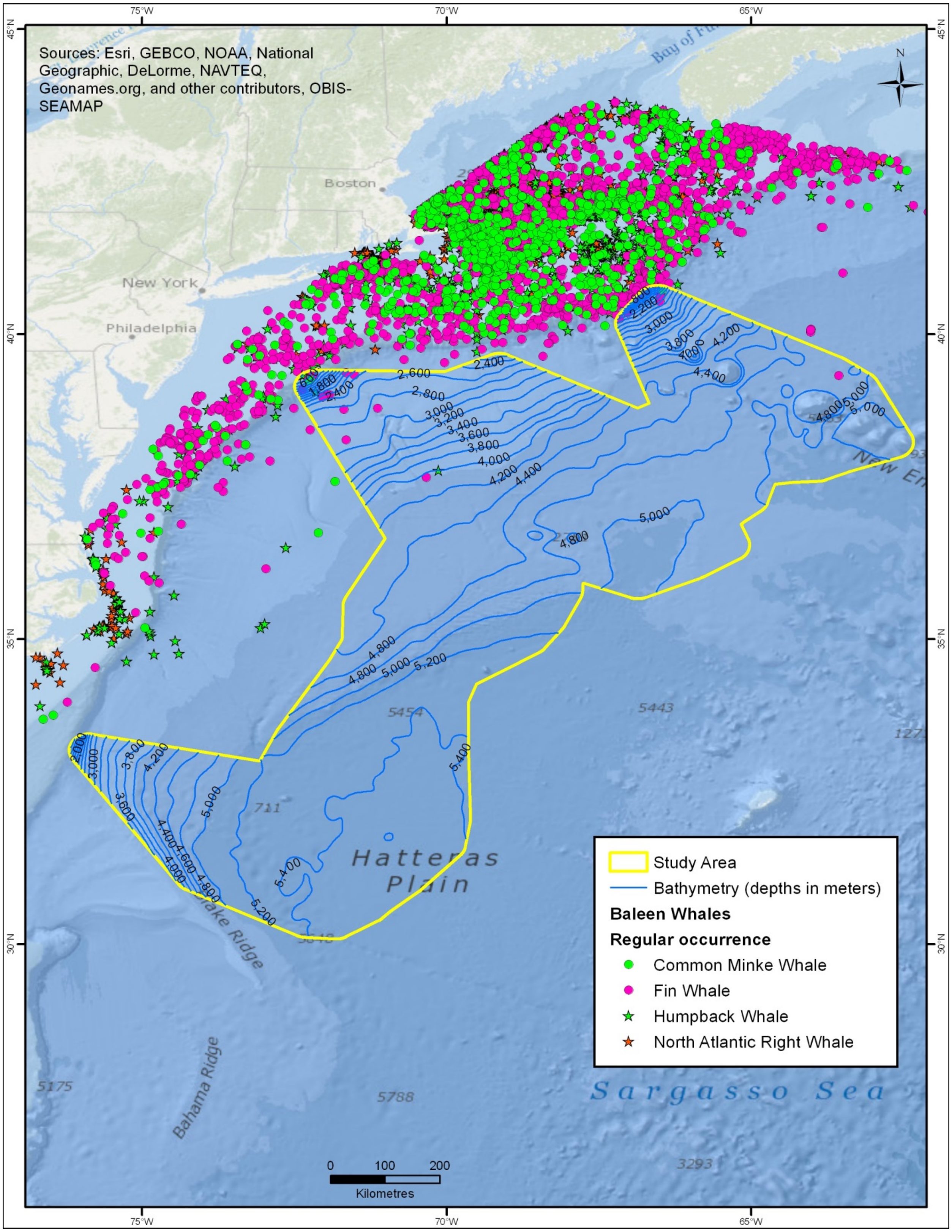


Figure 9: Baleen Whales (regular occurrence, multiyear observations)

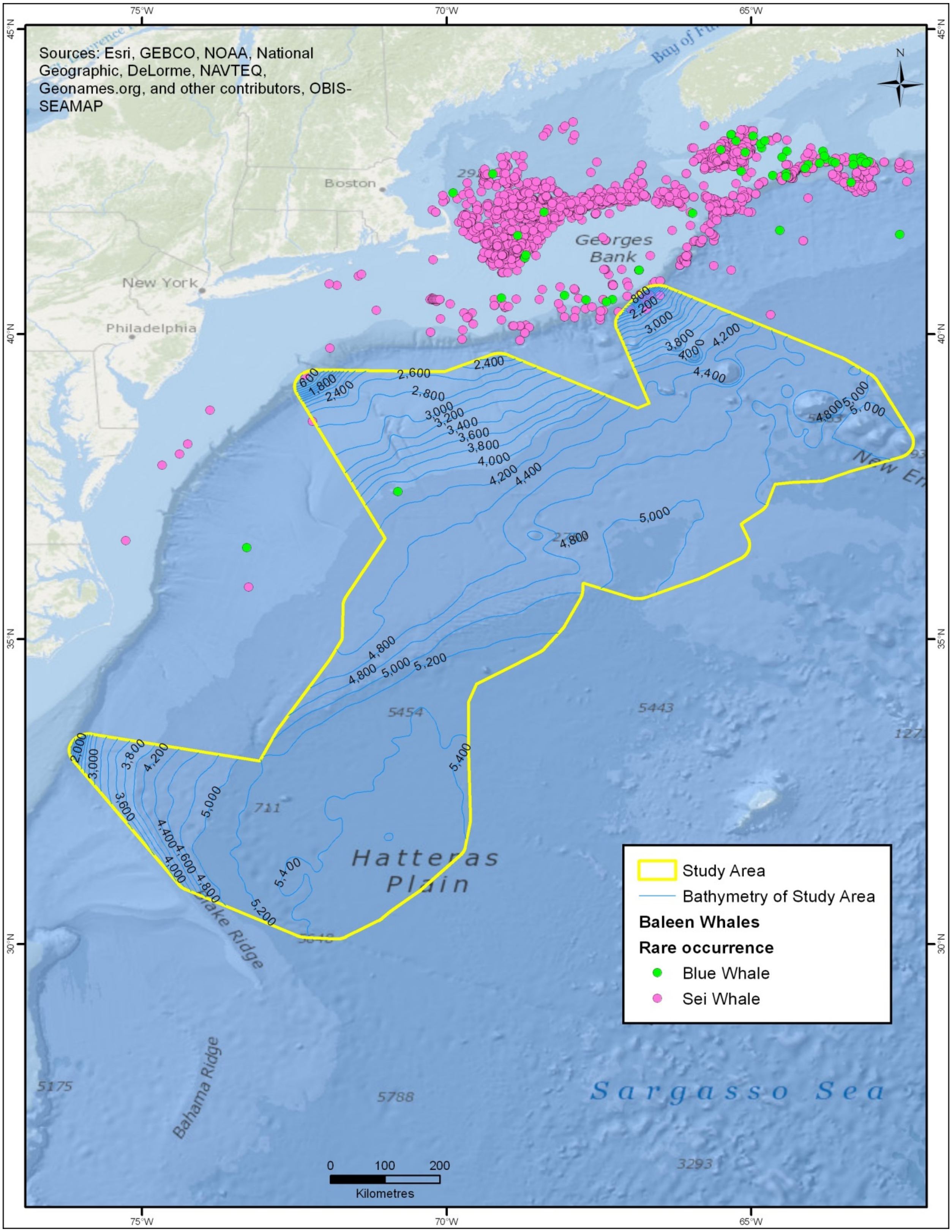


Figure 10: Baleen Whales (rare occurrence, multiyear observations)

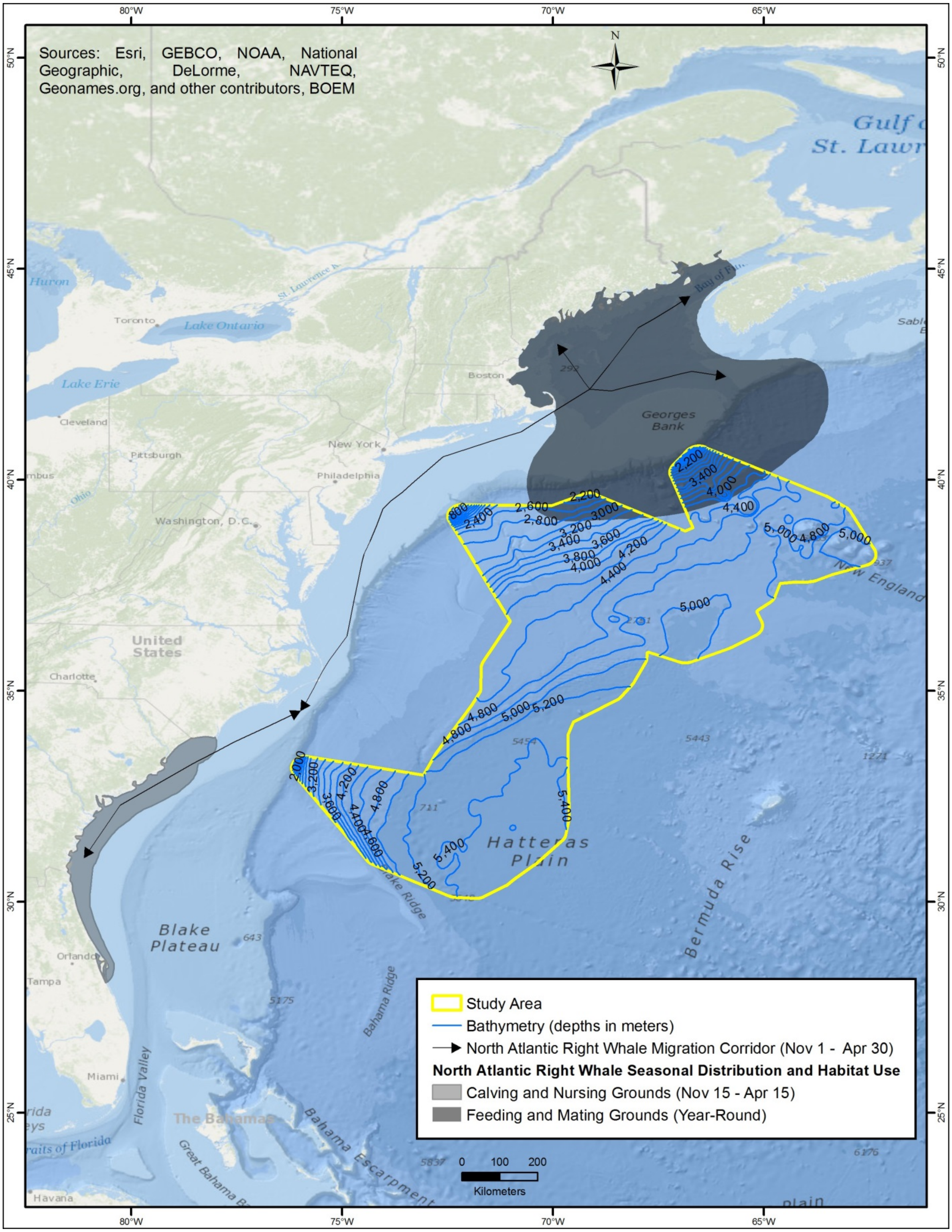


Figure 11: North Atlantic Right Whale Seasonal Distribution and Habitat Use

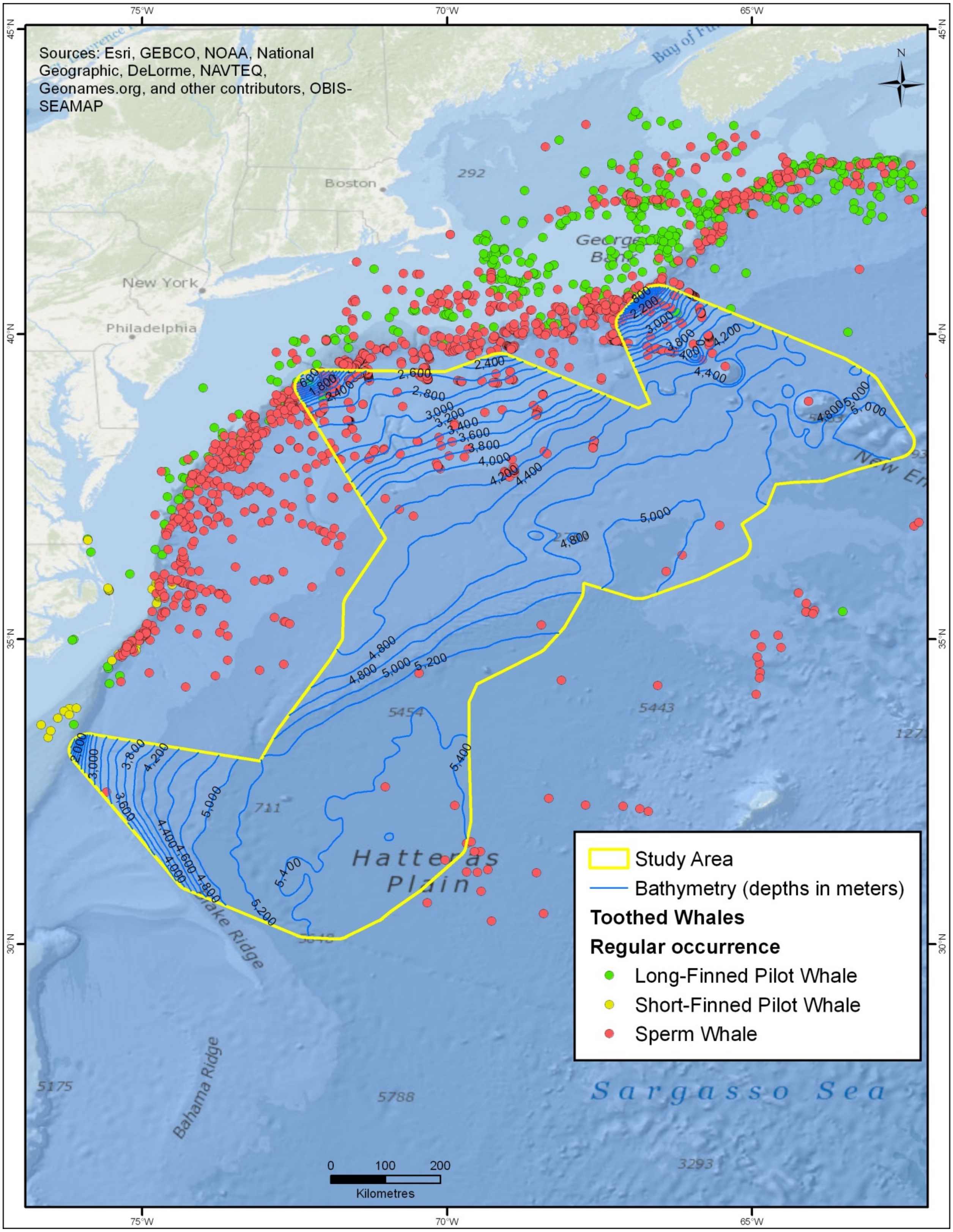


Figure 12: Toothed Whales (regular occurrence, multiyear observations)

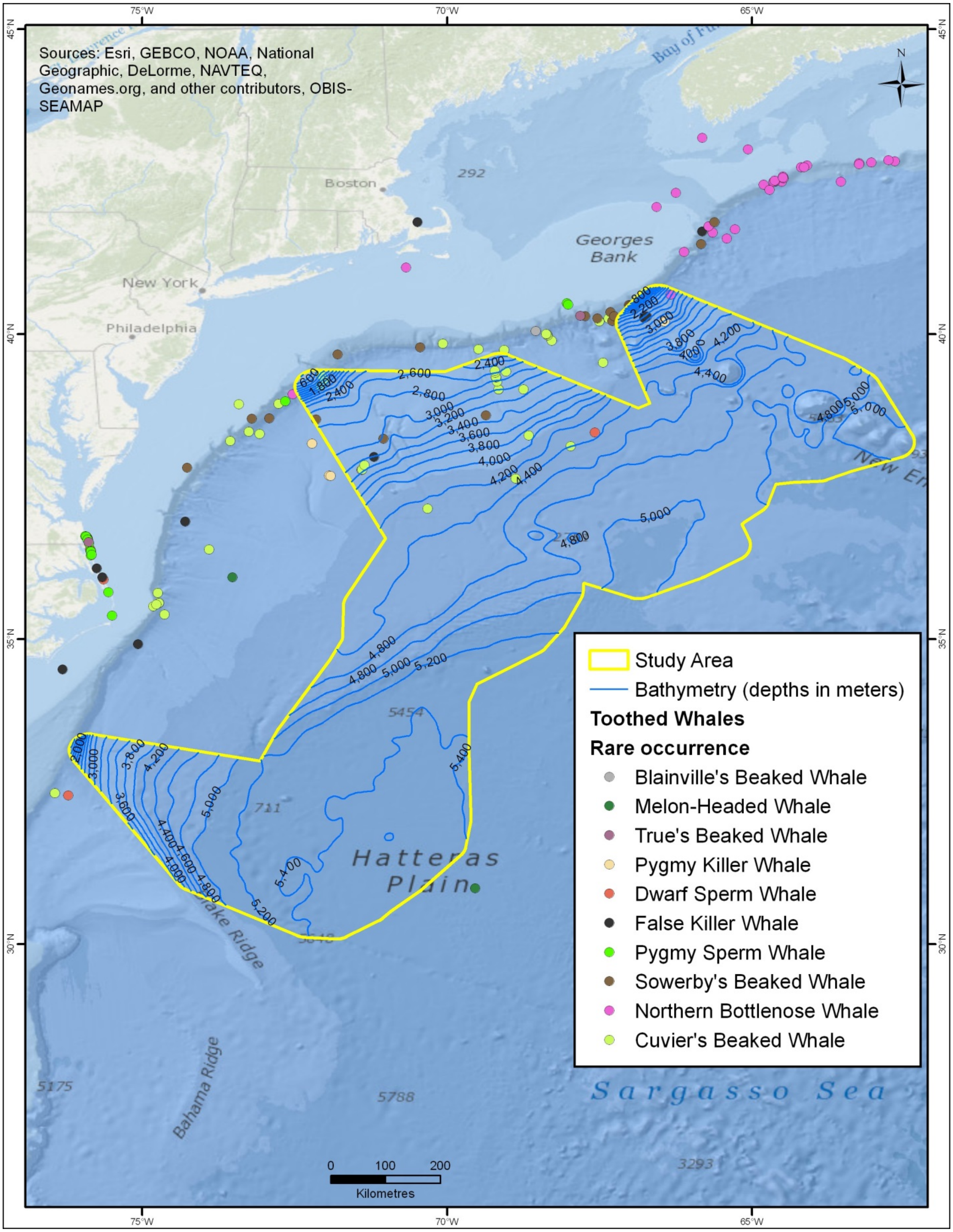


Figure 13: Toothed Whales (rare occurrence, multiyear observations)

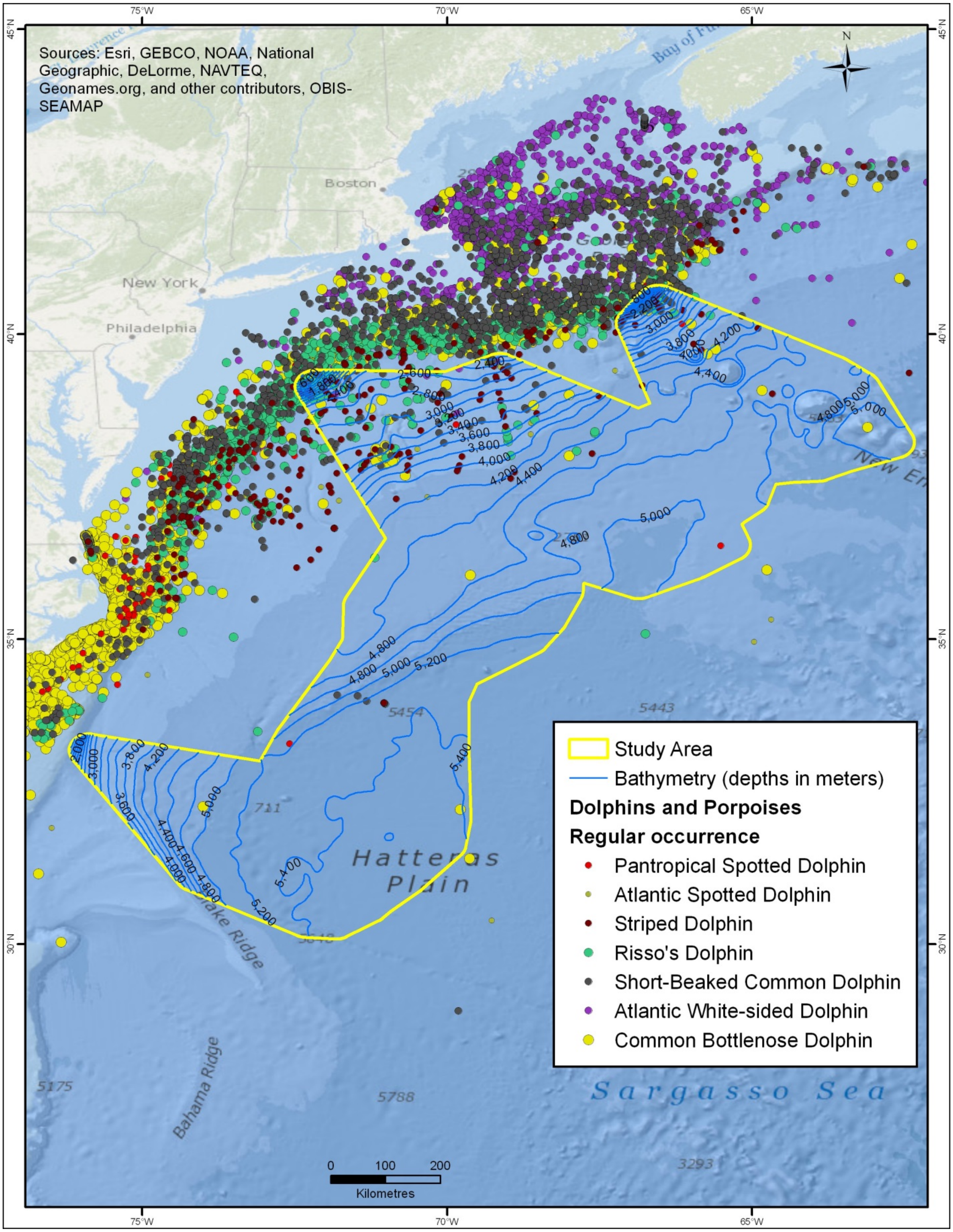


Figure 14: Dolphins and Porpoises (regular occurrence, multiyear observations)

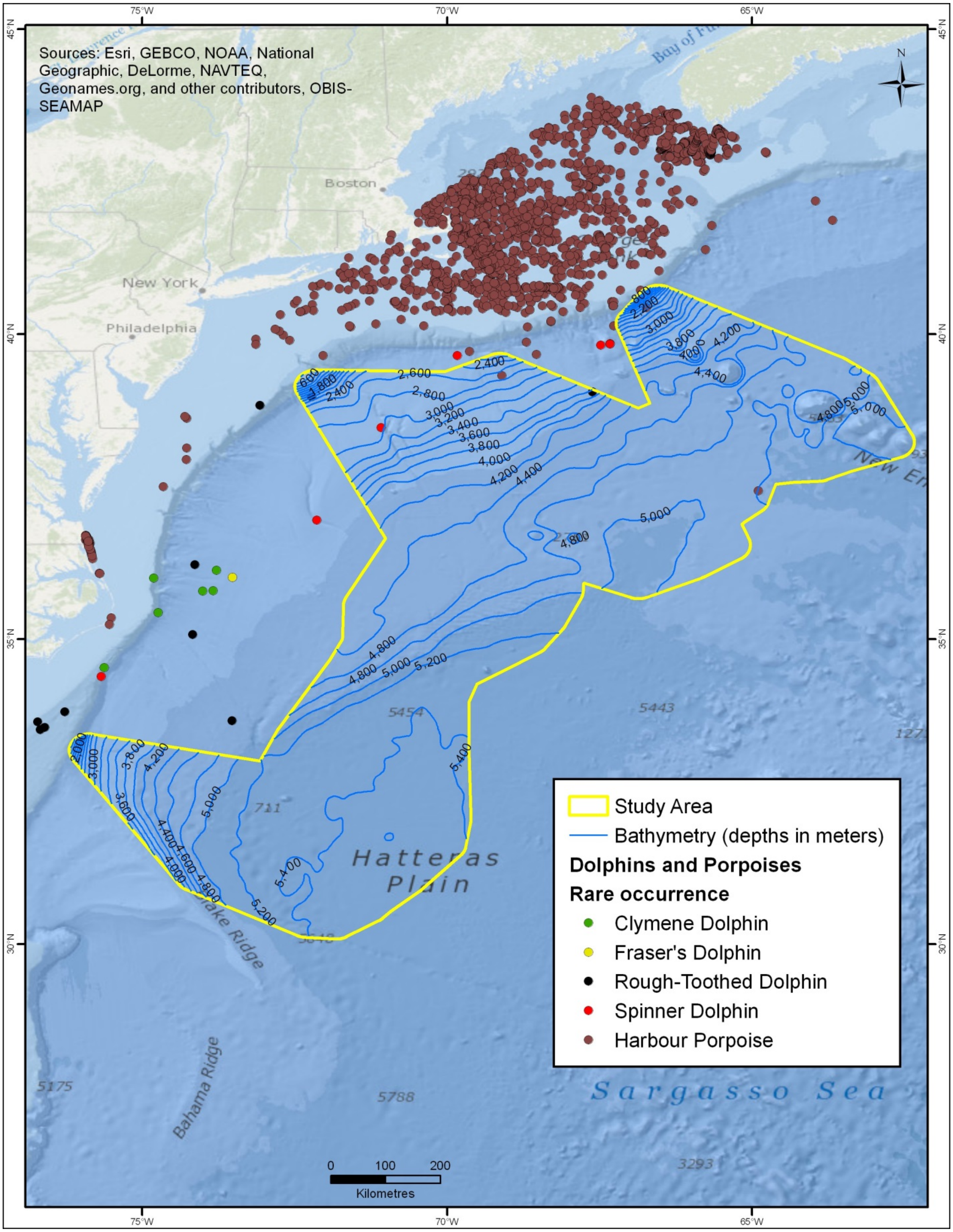


Figure 15: Dolphins and Porpoises (rare occurrence, multiyear observations)

Table 8: Marine Mammals Occurring in the Study and Regional Areas

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
***Suborder Mysticeiti* (Baleen Whales)**							
Common Minke Whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*)	Regular	Coastal, banks, shelf	8,987[4]; 125,000[5]	NL	LC	I	The common minke whale are among the most widely distributed and most abundant of the baleen whales (Carwardine 1998). The OBIS database reports several sightings of the common minke whale along the western edge of the proposed Study Area. The sightings increase toward the northwest, in the area identified as the year-round feeding and mating grounds for the NA right whale. In 1980, OBIS reported three sightings of the common minke whale within the proposed Study Area.
Sei Whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*)	Rare	Mostly pelagic, some offshore	386[4]; 12-13,000[6]	EN	EN	I	Sei whales are typically associated with steep bathymetric relief, such as the continental shelf break, canyons, or basins situated between banks and ledges where prey is concentrated (Kenney and Winn 1987; Schilling et *al.* 1992; Best and Lockyer 2002). This highly migratory species' (Jefferson et *al.* 2008) range includes the continental shelf waters of the northeastern U.S. and extends to south of Newfoundland. Sei whales are not common in U.S. Atlantic waters (NMFS 2012), however, OBIS reports six sightings of the sei whale within the proposed Study Area. The most recent being in October, 2006, and June 2001, both during the Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC) Right Whale Survey.
Bryde's Whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*)	Rare	Coastal, offshore	N/A	NL	DD	I	Bryde's whales are considered rare within the waters of the proposed Study Area, and there are no OBIS sightings reported in its vicinity. The season distribution of this whale is not well known (Reilly et al. 2008).
Blue Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*)	Rare	Coastal, shelf, and pelagic	937[7]	EN	EN	I	Blue whales are considered rare within the proposed Study Area. OBIS sightings identified one blue whale within the Study Area boundary back in 1969.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*)	Regular	Coastal, banks	3,985[4]; 24,887[8]	EN	EN	I	Fin whales are one of the more common mysticeiti species found within the proposed Study Area, and in the waters surrounding it. According to Palka (2006), they are the most commonly sighted ESA-listed large whale in the western North Atlantic. There are hundreds of OBIS sightings logged of this species near the Study Area boundaries, and 14 logged within it. The three most recent sightings are in 2003 and 2004 observed during the NEFSC Right Whale Survey. All other sightings are from the 1970s and 1980s. The USDOC, NMFS (2010) reports summer feeding grounds mostly between 41°20' and 51°00'N latitude (shore to 1,829m [6,000ft]). The proposed Study Area and project dates coincide with this cycle of the fin whale. Fin whale mating and births occur in the winter (November-March), with reproductive activity peaking in December and January. Hain et al. (1992) suggested that calving takes place during October to January in latitudes of the U.S. Mid-Atlantic region. The proposed survey period of April to September would not interfere with these important times**.**
North Atlantic Right Whale *(Eubalaena glacialis)*	Regular	Coastal and shelf waters	361[44]; 396[9]	EN	EN	I	Research results suggest the existence of six major congregation areas for the NA right whales: the coastal waters of the southeastern U.S., the Great South Channel, Georges Bank/Gulf of Main, Cape Cod and Massachusetts Bays, the Bay of Fundy, and the Scotian Shelf (Waring et al., 2010). Movements of individuals within and between these congregation area are extensive, and data show distant excursions, including into deep water off the continental shelf (Mate et al., 1997; Baumgartner and Mate, 2005). The congregations in U.S. eastern seaboard waters are recorded west of the Study Area; however, movements of the NA right whale could result in their presence in the proposed Study Area. In addition, year-round feeding and mating grounds exist for the NA right whale, which overlaps the north section of the proposed Study Area (Figure 11). While the OBIS database makes reference to hundreds of sightings in the vicinity of the proposed Study Area, mainly along the continental shelf, along the western boundary edge of the proposed Study Area, and in the year-round feeding and mating grounds, OBIS does not report any sightings within the confines of the Study Area.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Humpback Whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*)	Regular	Coastal, banks	847[4]; 11,570[10]	EN	LC	I	Sightings data show that humpback whales traverse coastal waters of the southeastern U.S., including the proposed Study Area (Waring et al. 2010). Reports of humpback whale sightings off Delaware Bay and Chesapeake Bay during the winter, suggest that the Mid-Atlantic region, including the proposed Study Area, may serve as wintering grounds for this species (Swingle et al. 1993; Barco et al. 2002). OBIS logged four sightings of humpback whales within the Study Area. The most recent sighting is from 2006, logged by the NEFSC Right Whale Survey spotted near the latter coordinates.
Suborder Odontoceti (Toothed Whales, Dolphins, and Porpoises)							
Sperm Whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*)	Regular	Pelagic, slope, canyons	4,804[4]; 13,190[15]	EN	VU	I	The sperm whale is the most commonly occurring odontoceti species within the proposed Study Area, and in the adjacent waters. The sperm summers in the Mid-Atlantic Bight off the Eastern U.S. coast from Virginia to Massachusetts (Reeves et al, 2002; Palka 2006). Hundreds of OBIS sightings of the sperm place them primarily in shelf and slope waters of the northeast U.S. and Nova Scotia which is customary given that groups commonly consist of 20 to 40 animals, including adult females, their calves, and juveniles (Waring et al. 2006). OBIS also recorded several sightings at abyssal depths ~ 16,400-ft (5000m). Within the proposed Study Area, there is in excess of 300 OBIS sightings of sperm whale, with the majority occurring in the slope waters in the northern and western extent.
Short-Finned Pilot Whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*)	Regular	Mostly pelagic, high relief	24,674[4,9]; 780,000[11]	NL	DD	II	The short-finned pilot whale is considered uncommon in mid-Atlantic waters, including the proposed Study Area. While there are no OBIS sightings of this species recorded within the Study Area, OBIS has records of 18 sightings of this species, all of which occurred since 2004.
Long-Finned Pilot Whale (*Globicephala melas*)	Regular	Mostly pelagic	12,619[4,9]; 780,000[8]	NL	DD	II	Similar to the short-finned pilot whale, the long-finned is also considered uncommon in the mid-Atlantic waters, including the proposed Study Area. There are five OBIS sightings of this species within the Study Area boundary. Three sightings from the 1980s. OBIS has hundreds of sightings of this species along the shelf and coastal waters of the U.S. and Canada.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Killer Whale *(Orcinus orca)*	Rare	Coastal	unknown	NL	DD	II	There are five reported sightings in the OBIS Database (no dates, or further information for sightings available).Four sightings occurred near the north north-east extent of the Study Area, of which two were in the slope waters.1 sighting occurred in the south-central extent of the Study Area (34°41' and 71°87'N).
Pygmy Killer Whale (*Feresa attenuata*)	Rare	Pelagic	N/A	NL	DD	II	There is only one OBIS sighting of the pygmy killer whale in the proposed Study Area. It was observed in 1981 during the Bureau of Land Management Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program (BLM CETAP) Air Sightings survey. Two other OBIS sightings were recorded along the shelf-waters, near the proposed Study Area.
Northern Bottlenose Whale (*Hyperoodon ampullatus*)	Rare	Pelagic	~40,000[12]	NL	DD	II	The northern bottlenose whale is considered rare within the proposed Study Area and adjacent waters. There is only one OBIS sighting of this species from 2006, recorded by the NEFSC Right Whale Survey.
Pygmy Sperm Whale (*Kogia breviceps*)	Rare	Deep waters off shelf	395[4,6,13]	NL	DD	II	Considered rare in the mid-Atlantic region, the pygmy sperm whale has no OBIS recorded sightings within the proposed Study Area. However, three sightings have been recorded in the slope waters near the Study Area. The single sighting was in 2004, during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey 2004, while the other was in 1998 during the NERSC Survey.
Dwarf Sperm Whale (*Kogia sima*)							Similar to the pygmy sperm whale, the dwarf sperm whale is also considered rare in the mid-Atlantic region, including in the proposed Study Area. Nonetheless, OBIS has logged two sightings of this species. One in 2004 during the NEFSC mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey 2004. The other sighting occurred in 1998 during the NEFSC Survey.
Sowerby's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon bindens*)	Rare	Pelagic, deep slope, canyons	3,513[4,9,14]	NL	DD	II	OBIS reports eight sightings of the Sowerby's beaked whale within the proposed Study Area. Six have occurred along the shelf with the other two being in the slope waters.
Blainville's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*)							OBIS reports only one sighting of the Blainville's beaked whale recorded in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey 2004. A second sighting near the northeast extent of the Study Area was logged in 1995 by NEFSC.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Gervais' Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon europaeus*)							There are no OBIS sightings of the Gervais' beaked whale within the proposed Study Area on in any adjacent waters.
True's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon mirus*)							OBIS does not have any records for sightings of the True's beaked whale within the proposed Study Area. However, of the 20 OBIS sightings for this species, two exist in the waters adjacent to the northwest boundary line of the Study Area. In 1995, during the NERSC 1995 per 9502 survey one True's was spotted along the shelf edge. In 2003, during the Virginia Aquarium Marine Mammal Strandings 1998-2008 the second was reported stranded near ~ 76°N, 37°W. Survey details do not report on the type of stranding.
Cuvier's Beaked Whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*)				NL	LC	II	Of all the beaked whales, the Cuvier's was the most common recorded in OBIS sightings in the shelf and slope waters adjacent to and within to the proposed Study Area. The 15 sightings within the Study Area occurred mostly in the slope waters in the northwest.
Melon-Headed Whale (*Peponocephala electra*)	Rare	Deep waters off shelf	N/A	NL	LC	II	The melon-headed whale is considered rare within the proposed Study Area and in all adjacent waters. While there are no OBIS sightings within the Study Area, one sighting was recorded near the southeastern extent of its boundary. This sighting occurred in 2005 during the Sargasso 2005 cetacean sightings survey.
Harbour Porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*)	Rare	Shelf, coastal, pelagic	89,054[4]	NL	LC	II	OBIS has records for thousands of sightings of the harbor porpoise in the coastal and shelf water around the Gulf of Maine. Within the proposed Study Area, three sightings have been reported. Two in the slope waters near the northern extent of the Study Area, and one at abyssal depth ~ 16,400-ft (5000m). The latter was spotted in 1978 during the Programme Integre de recherches sur les oiseaux pelagiques (PIROP) Northwest Atlantic survey
False Killer Whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*)	Rare	Pelagic	N/A	NL	DD	II	The false killer whale is considered rare within the proposed Study Area and adjacent waters. There are only 11 OBIS sightings of this species off the U.S. coast with two occurring within the Study Area. One record in 1971, the other two occurred in 1997.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*)	Regular	Shelf, pelagic, high relief	120,743[4,9]	NL	LC	II	The short-beaked common dolphin is considered common within the proposed Study Area and surrounding waters. Within the Study Area, OBIS reports 83 sightings. Four studies have reported sightings since the year 2000. In 2001 and 2002, the NEFSC Right Whale Survey recorded 14 and four sightings respectfully. Also in 2001, the Canada Maritime Regional Cetacean Sightings identified one short-beaked common dolphin. Lastly, in 2004 the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey 2004 reported spotting eight of these species.
Risso's Dolphin (*Grampus griseus*)	Regular	Shelf, slope, seamounts	20,479[4,9]	NL	LC	II	The Risso's dolphin is considered common within the proposed Study Area. OBIS has over 100 sightings of this species within the boundaries, and thousands along adjacent coastal, shelf and slope waters. Many of the sightings occur in the shelf and slope waters, nine sightings occurred in the deeper waters, in isobaths of ~ 14,438-ft (4,400m).
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus acutus*)	Regular	Shelf and slope	63,368[4]	NL	LC	II	The Atlantic white-sided dolphin has thousands of OBIS sightings in coastal, shelf and slope waters, with the majority occurring on the shelf north of the proposed Study Area. Within the Study Area boundaries OBIS has recorded ten sightings of this species. While nine of the sightings were from the late 1970s and early 1980s, one sighting was reported in 2002 from the NEFSC Right Whale Survey.
Striped Dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*)	Regular	Offshore convergence zones and upwellings	94,462[4,9]	NL	LC	II	OBIS records indicate ~ 75 sightings of the striped dolphin within the proposed Study Area, nearly all occurring along the shelf and slope waters in the north and west extent.
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin (*Stenella frontalis*)	Regular	Shelf, offshore	50,987[4,9]	NL	DD	II	Within the proposed Study Area, OBIS records indicate that eight Atlantic spotted dolphins have been sighted. The sightings were divided between mid and base slope waters. Four were observed in 1998 during the NEFSC Survey 1998 1. The other four in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	
Common Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncates*)	Regular	Coastal, shelf, pelagic	81,588[4,16]	NL	LC	II	Of the NW Atlantic stock, there are at least five genetically distinct stocks of the common bottlenose dolphin distributed from southern Long Island, New York to central Florida (NMFS 2001; McLellan et al. 2003). These are further divided into two morphotypes: coastal and offshore (Waring et al. 2006). OBIS sightings are in the thousands for the common bottlenose dolphin in coastal and shelf, slope and abyssal waters. There are ~ 100 sightings of this species in the proposed Study Area and likely consist of the offshore morphotype. NOAA has declared an Unusual Mortality Event (UME) along the east coast for bottlenose dolphin (NOAA, 2013). The UME appears to be a result of morbillivirus and seems to be affecting the dolphin populations in nearshore waters <50m. There remains some uncertainty on cause and populations affected.
Fraser's Dolphin (*Lagenodelphis hosei*)	Rare	Shelf and slope	N/A	NL	LC	II	There are no OBIS sightings of the Fraser's dolphin within the proposed Study Area, and only one OBIS sighting in the waters adjacent to its boundaries. This dolphin was observed near the western boundary of the Study Area.
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*)	Regular	Coastal, shelf and slope	4,439[4,9]	NL	LC	II	There are six OBIS sightings of the pantropical spotted dolphin within the proposed Study Area. Three occurred in shelf and slope waters one in slopes waters, one at the base of the slope, and one in abyssal depths of ~ 16,400-ft (5000m). The latter was observed in 2005 during the Sargasso 2005 cetacean sightings survey.
Clymene Dolphin (*Stenella clymene*)	Rare	Coastal, shelf and slope	N/A	NL	DD	II	There are no OBIS sightings for the clymene dolphin within the proposed Study Area and only seven sightings in shelf and slope waters in southern U.S. waters.
Spinner Dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*)	Rare	Mainly nearshore	N/A	NL	DD	II	OBIS only has one sightings record of the spinner dolphin within the proposed Study Area. It occurred in 1997, during a BLM CETAP Ship sighting. Other sightings in adjacent waters occurred in the slopes west of the Study Area.
Rough-Toothed Dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*)	Rare	Mostly pelagic	N/A	NL	LC	II	Within the proposed Study Area, there are two OBIS sightings of the rough-toothed dolphin. One occurred in 1998 during the NEFSC Survey 1998 1, near the shelf edge in slope waters. The other occurred near the base of the slope in 1979 during an ELM CETAP Ship sighting.

Species (Common Name)	Frequency of Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Population Estimates	Status			Comments
				ESA[1]	IUCN[2]	CITES[3]	

N/A – Not available or not assessed

U.S. Endangered Species Act: EN = Endangered; NL = Not listed (ECOS 2013)

[2] Codes for IUCN classification: EN = Endangered; VU = Vulnerable; LC = Least Concern; DD = Data Deficient. Classifications are from the IUCN Red List Threatened Species (IUCN 2013).

[3] Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (UNEP-WCMC 2013); Appendix I = Threatened with Extinction; Appendix II = not necessarily now threatened with extinction but may become so unless trade is closely controlled.

[4] Best population estimate "NBest" from Table 1 of Waring et *al*. (2010) stock assessment report.

[5] Central and Northeast Atlantic (IWC 2012)

[6] North Atlantic (Cattanach et at. 2003)

[7] Central and Northeast Atlantic (Pike et *al.* 2009)

[8] Central and Northeast Atlantic (Vikingsson et al. 2009)

[9] Western North Atlantic, in U.S. and southern Canadian waters (Waring et *al.* 2012)

[10] Likely negatively biased (Stevick et *al.* 2003)

[11] *Globicephala sp.* combined, Central and Eastern North Atlantic (IWC 2012)

[12] Eastern North Atlantic (NAMMC 1995)

[13] Both *Kogia* species

[14] *Ziphius* and *Mesoplodon* spp. Combined

[15] For the northeast Atlantic, Faroes-Iceland, and the U.S. east coast (Whitehead 2002)

[16] Offshore, Western North Atlantic (Waring et *al.* 2012)

[17] Western Atlantic Population (NOAA 2012)

[18] All stocks of NW Atlantic (Thomas et *al.* 2011)

[19] Northwest Atlantic (Hammill, M.O. and Stenson, G.B. 2011)

[20] Northwest Atlantic (Andersen, J.M. et *al.* 2009)

3.5.1 ESA-listed Cetacean Species

Several large cetacean species are listed as threatened or endangered by NMFS (Table 9). Many cetacean species, which have very low reproductive potentials, are particularly vulnerable to anthropogenic impacts such as accidental entanglement in fishing gear, collisions with ships, and noise and chemical pollution, which threaten many populations and may prevent depleted populations from recovery. The sei, blue, fin, humpback, and North Atlantic right whales are listed by NMFS as endangered species under the ESA.

Table 9: ESA-listed Marine Mammal Species that May Occur in the Study Area

Species	Status			Comments
	ESA1	IUCN2	CITES3	
Sei Whale	EN	EN	I	During the 19th and 20th centuries, sei whales were targeted and greatly depleted by: commercial hunting and whaling, with an estimated 300,000 animals killed for their meat and oil. Other threats that may affect sei whale populations are ship strikes and interactions with fishing gear, such as traps/pots.
Blue Whale	EN	EN	I	Whaling reduced the original blue whale population. There are fewer than 250 mature individuals and strong indications of a low calving rate and a low rate of recruitment to the studied population. Today, the biggest threats for this species come from ship strikes, disturbance from increasing whale watch activity, entanglement in fishing gear, and pollution. They may also be vulnerable to long-term changes in climate, which could affect the abundance of their prey (zooplankton).
Fin Whale	EN	EN	I	The fin whale population has been decimated by exploitation. Populations have also been impacted by commercial whaling, collisions with vessels, entanglement in fishing gear, reduced prey abundance due to overfishing, and habitat.
North Atlantic Right Whale	EN	EN	I	North Atlantic right whales, found only in the North Atlantic, were heavily reduced by whaling. The total population currently numbers about 322 animals (about 220-240 mature animals), has been decreasing during the last decade, and is experiencing high mortality from ship strikes and entanglement in fishing gear.
Humpback Whale	EN	LC	I	Humpback whales face a series of threats including: entanglement in fishing gear (bycatch), ship strikes, whale watch harassment, habitat impacts, and harvest. Humpbacks are increasing in abundance in much of their range.

[1] U.S. Endangered Species Act: EN = Endangered; TR = Threatened; DE = Delisted; UR = Under Review; NL = Not listed (ECOS 2013)
[2] Codes for IUCN classification: EN = Endangered; CR = Critically Endangered; VU = Vulnerable; LC = Least Concern; DD = Data Deficient. Classifications are from the IUCN Red List Threatened Species (IUCN 2012).
[3] Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (UNEP-WCMC 2013); Appendix I = Threatened with Extinction; Appendix II = not necessarily now threatened with extinction but may become so unless trade is closely controlled.

3.6 MARINE AND MIGRATORY BIRDS

General information on the taxonomy, ecology, distribution and movement, and acoustic capabilities of seabird families is given in Section 3.5.1 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011).

There are numerous marine and coastal bird species that may be present in or near the study area, including both resident and migratory species. Resident species are present throughout the year, whereas migratory species may be present only during breeding and wintering seasons, or they may only migrate through the area. There are three distinct taxonomic and ecological groups: seabirds, waterfowl, and shorebirds, which comprise 18 taxonomic families. Species within a given taxonomic family of birds share common physical and behavioral characteristics that allow these birds to be presented in this document by family rather than by individual species. Because of these common characteristics, the potential for exposure to geophysical activities would be similar for species within a given family that share similar behavioral characteristics. Table 10 provides a summary of this information, including Ocean Biogeographic Information System (OBIS) sightings data for seabird species that could occur within the proposed Study Area. The distribution of which is dependent on availability and distribution of preferred prey and the breeding status of the species.

Table 10: Conservation Status and Sightings of Seabirds That May Occur In or Near the Proposed Study Area

Group/Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	ESA[1a] / IUCN[1b] / CITES[1c]	OBIS Sightings Within Study Area
Common Loon (Gavia immer)	Rare	NL / LC / N/A	None
Grebes (Podiceps grisegena, Podiceps auritus Podiceps conutus, Podilymbus podiceps)	Rare	N/A / LC / N/A	None
Petrel (Pterodroma hasitata[i], Pterodroma arminjoniana[ii])	Regular	UR[i]; N/A[ii] / EN[i]; VU[ii] / N/A	7 (spp. *hasitata*)
Shearwaters (Puffinus gravis, Puffinus lherminieri, Calonectris diomedea, Fulmarus glacialis)	Regular	N/A / LC / N/A	Hundreds along the shelf, slope and oceanic waters

Group/Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	ESA[1a] / IUCN[1b] / CITES[1c]	OBIS Sightings Within Study Area
Pelicans (*Pelecanus occidentalis*[iii], Pelecanus erythrorhynchos[iv])	Rare	DE[iii]; NL[iv]/ LC / N/A	None
Gannets/Boobies (Morus bassanus, Sula leucogaster)	Regular	N/A / N/A / N/A	~15 sightings (spp. *bassanus*) in shelf and slope waters in northern extent
Cormorants (Phalacrocorax auritus[v], Phalacrocoracidae carbo[vi])	Rare	NL[v]; N/A[vi] / N/A / N/A	None
Gulls (Larus argentatus[vii], Larus atricillav[viii], Larus marinus[vii], Larus philadelphia[vii], Rissa tridactyla[vii])	Regular	N/A[vii]; NL[viii] / N/A / N/A	~ 100 sightings in shelf, slope and oceanic waters (mostly spp. *argentatus* then spp. *marinus*)
Tern (Sterna hirundo[ix], Sterna anaethetus[x], Sterna dougallii[xi])	Regular[5]; Rare[6]	NL[ix]; N/A[x]; EN & TR[xi] / N/A / N/A	6 sightings in shelf, slope and oceanic waters (spp. *hirundo* and unk.)

N/A – Not available or not assessed
[a] U.S. Endangered Species Act: EN = Endangered; TR = Threatened; DE = Delisted; UR = Under Review; NL = Not listed (ECOS 2013)
[1b] Codes for IUCN classification: EN = Endangered; CR = Critically Endangered; VU = Vulnerable; LC = Least Concern; DD = Data Deficient. Classifications are from the IUCN Red List Threatened Species (IUCN 2012).
[1c] Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (UNEP-WCMC 2013); Appendix I = Threatened with Extinction; Appendix II = not necessarily now threatened with extinction by may become so unless trade is closely controlled.

Seabirds are defined as those species that live in the marine environment and feed at sea (Schreiber and Burger, 2002). Seabirds may be categorized by the marine zones in which they tend to forage. Pelagic birds forage away from the coastal zone and in open ocean and shorebirds forage in coastal waters, while other seabirds use both nearshore and pelagic zones (Michel, 2011). Certain waterfowl (Order Anseriformes) taxa commonly termed sea ducks feed and rest within coastal (nearshore and inshore) waters outside of their breeding seasons. They typically form large flocks and are often observed in large rafts on the sea surface during this period. Shorebirds utilize coastal environments for nesting, feeding, and resting. They are included within Order Charadriiformes (along with gulls and terns). The shorebird group consists of four families and includes sandpipers, plovers, and stilts.

In offshore waters, prey distribution is generally of prime importance. The upwelling and subsequent mixing of the water at the edge of the Shelf is attractive to seabirds as it concentrates prey. Pelagic seabirds spend most of their lives at sea, coming to land only to breed. Most pelagic seabirds subsist on a diet of small fish including sand lance, capelin and herring and plankton.

The temporal distribution of marine seabirds offshore is typically as follows:

- The offshore seabird community consists primarily of shearwaters and storm-petrels during the summer months, and of kittiwakes, fulmars during the winter.
- Nearly all the pelagic birds found on the Shelf and Slope do not breed in the Study Area waters.
- Greater Shearwaters are abundant from April to December.
- Northern Fulmars have been observed in proximity of the Study Area throughout the year.
- Large numbers of Storm-petrels arrive in offshore waters in May. They remain abundant on the Shelf until early autumn when they migrate south at the end of the breeding season.

3.6.1 ESA-listed Bird Species

Section 4.2.4.1.1 of the BOEM PEIS (2012) and 3.3 of BOEM 2012 Biological Assessment provides a species overview and critical habitat designation for three ESA listed, species: the Roseate Tern (*Sterna dougallii*), Bermuda Petrel (*Pterodroma cahow*), Piping Plover (*Charadrius melodus*), and one non-listed seabird, the Red Knot (*Calidris canutus*). Piping Plover and Red Knot are shorebirds that are unlikely to come into contact with geophysical activities.

Table 11 describes the two ESA-listed marine bird species relevant to the Study Area. Roseate Terns are more likely to come into contact with geophysical activities, as they forage offshore and feed by plunge-diving, often submerging completely when diving for fish. The Bermuda Petrel is also known to occur within the area, but feeds by snatching prey from the sea surface. USGS has submitted a request for formal consultation under Section 7 of the ESA with the US Fish and Wildlife Service concerning these bird species.

Table 11: ESA-listed Bird Species That May Occur in the Study Area

Species	Status	Comment
Roseate Tern (Sterna dougallii)	Endangered, ESA Atlantic Coast south to North Carolina *Threatened* in all other areas of the Western Hemisphere (USFWS 2012b), *Least Concern* - 2012 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (IUCN 2012)	Human exploitation (trapping for market) of the Roseate Tern on its wintering grounds has been the main threat for the species. Toxic chemicals passed through the food chain and their effects on reproduction (thinning of eggshells, premature breakage of eggs, and reduced reproductive success) are also a concern. Breeding habitat includes sandy or rocky offshore islands and barrier beaches (Gochfeld et al. 1998). European populations winter in West Africa, between Guinea and Gabon (del Hoyo et al. 1996). During the breeding season, roseate terns are strictly coastal, whereas during the non-breeding season, they migrate well offshore and may be primarily pelagic. Roseate terns feed primarily on small marine fish taken over sandbars or shoals, or over schools of pelagic predatory fish (Gochfeld et al. 1998).
Bermuda Petrel (Pterodroma cahow)	*Endangered,* ESA (USFWS 2012a) Endangered- 2012 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (IUCN 2012).	The Bermuda petrel was exploited for food and was thought to be extinct by the 17th century. It was only rediscovered in 1951, at which time the population consisted of 18 pairs (del Hoyo et al. 1992). The population has been the subject of an ongoing recovery effort and by 2008 was up to 85 breeding pairs (Maderios et al. 2012). This population is now increasing slowly, but remains vulnerable to storm damage, erosion, and predation (BirdLife International 2012a; Maderios et al. 2012).

3.7 MARINE FISH

General information on the taxonomy, ecology, distribution and movements, and acoustic capabilities of marine fish are given in Section 3.3.1, of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011. The Study Area encompasses demersal and pelagic habitats in the open ocean that support approximately 600 fish species (Ray et al., 1998, Smith-Vaniz et al., 1999). From a geographic perspective, the Study Area straddles two broad eco-regions:

(1) the Mid-Atlantic Bight (MAB) from Delaware Bay to Cape Hatteras, North Carolina; and

(2) the South Atlantic Bight (SAB) from Cape Hatteras to Cape Canaveral, Florida.

3.7.1 Demersal Fish

Demersal fish are fish that live near the seafloor for the majority of their adult lives. They are commonly referred to as groundfish and historically supported the largest fisheries in the western Atlantic. A selection of demersal fish families known to occur in the Study Area are described here, including the codfishes (Family Gadidae), the flounders (Family Pleuronectidae), the redfishes (Family Scorpaeniudae), the skates (Family Rajidae). moray eels

(Muraenidae), squirrelfishes (Holocentridae), groupers and sea basses (Serranidae), scorpionfishes (Scorpaenidae), grunts (Haemulidae), snappers (Lutjanidae), porgies (Sparidae), wrasses (Labridae), damselfishes (Pomacentridae), angelfishes (Pomacanthidae), blennies (Labrisomidae and Blenniidae), and triggerfishes (Balistidae). (Ophichthidae), searobins (Triglidae), drums and croakers (Sciaenidae), lizardfishes (Synodontidae), sand flounders (Paralichthyidae), and tonguefishes (Cynoglossidae).

3.7.2 Pelagic Fish

Pelagic fish are those species that spend the majority of their lives at the surface or in the water column off the seafloor. Within this broad life history classification, there exists three sub-divisions: the epipelagic fishes that live from coastal to oceanic waters, but only within the upper 100 m layer of water; the mesopelagic fishes that live between the euphotic zone and approximately 1,000 m; and the bathypelagic species that live in the water column below 1,000 m. Most epipelagic species are migratory and present on the Shelf and Slope typically during the summer and fall. The primary coastal pelagic families occurring in the SAB and MAB are sharks (Carcharhinidae, Lamnidae and Sphyrnidae), dogfish sharks (Squalidae), anchovies (Engraulidae), herrings (Clupeidae), mackerels (Scombridae), jacks (Carangidae), mullets (Mugilidae), bluefish (Pomatomidae), and cobia (Rachycentridae), flyingfishes (Exocoetidae), halfbeaks (Hemiramphidae), oarfishes (Regalecidae and Lophotidae), snake mackerels (Gempylidae), jacks (Carangidae), dolphin (Coryphaenidae), pomfrets (Bramidae), marlins, sailfish, and spearfish (Istiophoridae), swordfish (Xiphiidae), tunas (Scombridae), medusafishes (Centrolophidae), molas (Molidae), and triggerfishes (Balistidae). A number of these species, e.g., dolphin (*Coryphaena hippurus*), sailfish (*Istiophorus platypterus*), white marlin (*Tetrapterus albidus*), blue marlin (*Makaira nigricans*) and tunas are important to commercial and recreational fisheries. These species tend to school, undergo migrations, and are generally piscivorous.

Smaller coastal pelagic fishes exhibit similar life history characteristics, but the species are usually planktivorous. Smaller coastal pelagic fishes occurring in the Study Area include herrings such as alewife (*Alosa pseudoharengus*), American shad (*Alosa sapidissima*), blueback herring (*Alosa aestivalis*), Atlantic herring (*Clupea harengus*), thread herring (*Opisthonema oglinum*), Spanish sardine (*Sardinella aurita*), round herring (*Etrumeus teres*), and Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*).

In the mesopelagic and bathypelagic zones of the Study Area, fish assemblages are numerically dominated by lanternfishes (Myctophidae), bristlemouths (Gonostomatidae), and hatchetfishes (Sternoptychidae).

3.7.3 Fish Species Listed as Threatened or Endangered

Section 3.3 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011) provides the species overview, distribution, and critical habitat designation for fish species that could occur within the proposed Study Area. The Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*) is a proposed threatened/ endangered species found in shelf waters (including areas offshore of Virginia and North Carolina) during fall and winter months. Two anadromous species, the blueback herring (*Alosa aestivalis*) and the alewife (*Alosa pseudoharengus*), are candidate species currently undergoing a status review to be listed as threatened. Bluefin tuna (*T. thunnus*) is now designated as a species of special concern.

3.7.4 Fish Eggs and Larvae

Section 4.2.5.1.2 of the BOEM PEIS (2012) describes ichthyoplankton in the Study Area. Pelagic eggs and larvae found in the SAB are products of spawning mainly from warm temperate and tropical. The warm temperate species are spawned within the SAB, whereas the tropical eggs and larvae are carried into the area from more southerly spawning locations. Several of the region's commercially important species, including Atlantic menhaden, Atlantic croaker, spot, summer flounder, and southern flounder (*Paralichthys lethostigma*), migrate from nearshore shelf waters to the shelf edge to spawn. The larvae of these species are transported back across the shelf and eventually into inshore/estuarine nursery areas. Depending on the position of the Gulf Stream front, the ichthyoplankton in the SAB forms a mixture of slope and shelf/slope groups. The slope group is typified by lanternfish throughout the year. During spring, mackerel larvae reach peak abundance. Members of the slope group at other times of the year include inshore species such as gobies, wrasses, and flounders. The shelf/slope group includes fishes such as lefteye flounders, jacks, mullets (Mugil spp.), bluefish, filefish (Monacanthidae), goatfish (Mullidae), and sea basses (Serranidae); several of these are economically important species. The composition and abundance of ichthyoplankton at any particular time depends upon the position of the Gulf Stream front (Govoni 1993).

Fish eggs and larvae found in the MAB come from warm temperate, cold temperate, and boreal regions (Doyle et al., 1993). In general, the most abundant fish eggs and larvae found during winter months are those of cold temperate species originating in more northerly waters. During spring, summer, and fall months, ichthyoplankton is dominated by warm temperate species originating from more southerly waters. Lanternfishes (*Benthosema glaciale* and *Ceratoscopelus maderensis*) define the slope/oceanic group (Doyle et al., 1993) and some flatfish larvae occur with *C. maderensis*. The outer shelf group includes witch flounder, silver hake, Atlantic bonito, cusk-eels (Ophidiidae), and species from more southerly waters such as razorfish (*Xyrichtys* spp.), lefteye flounders (Bothidae), and gobies (Gobiidae) (Hare and Cowen, 1991; Cowen et al., 1993; Doyle et al., 1993).

3.8 BENTHIC INVERTEBRATES

Section 3.2 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011) addresses marine benthic invertebrates status, ecological importance, general ecology, and distribution. Of relevance to marine seismic activities are those invertebrates potentially sensitive to low-frequency seismic noise. Limited studies suggest that a few invertebrate groups are capable of detecting seismic noise. Among invertebrates, only decapods (lobsters, crabs and shrimps, including prawns [e.g., Offutt 1970]), and mollusks (cephalopods such as octopuses, squids, cuttlefishes, and nautiluses [e.g., Budelmann and Williamson 1994]) are known to sense low-frequency sound. No decapod crustaceans or cephalopod species of invertebrates are listed as vulnerable, threatened, or endangered within the Study Area.

3.8.1 Deep-Sea Corals and Sponges

Deep-sea coral species have been shown to occur in the Northeastern U.S. waters (NOAA NMFS 2011) and in close proximity to the Study Area with a few known locations (Figure 16). Deep-sea corals are important components for benthic habitats and contribute to structure and species diversity (Templeman 2010). They provide structural complexity to relatively homogeneous seafloor and therefore likely to provide shelter, food, or substrate for epifaunal growth for other organisms (Watanabe et al. 2009) including commercial fish (Gilkinson and Edinger 2009). Damage to corals caused by humans results in slow recovery, and the potential to alternations in associated benthic and fish communities (Templeman 2010).

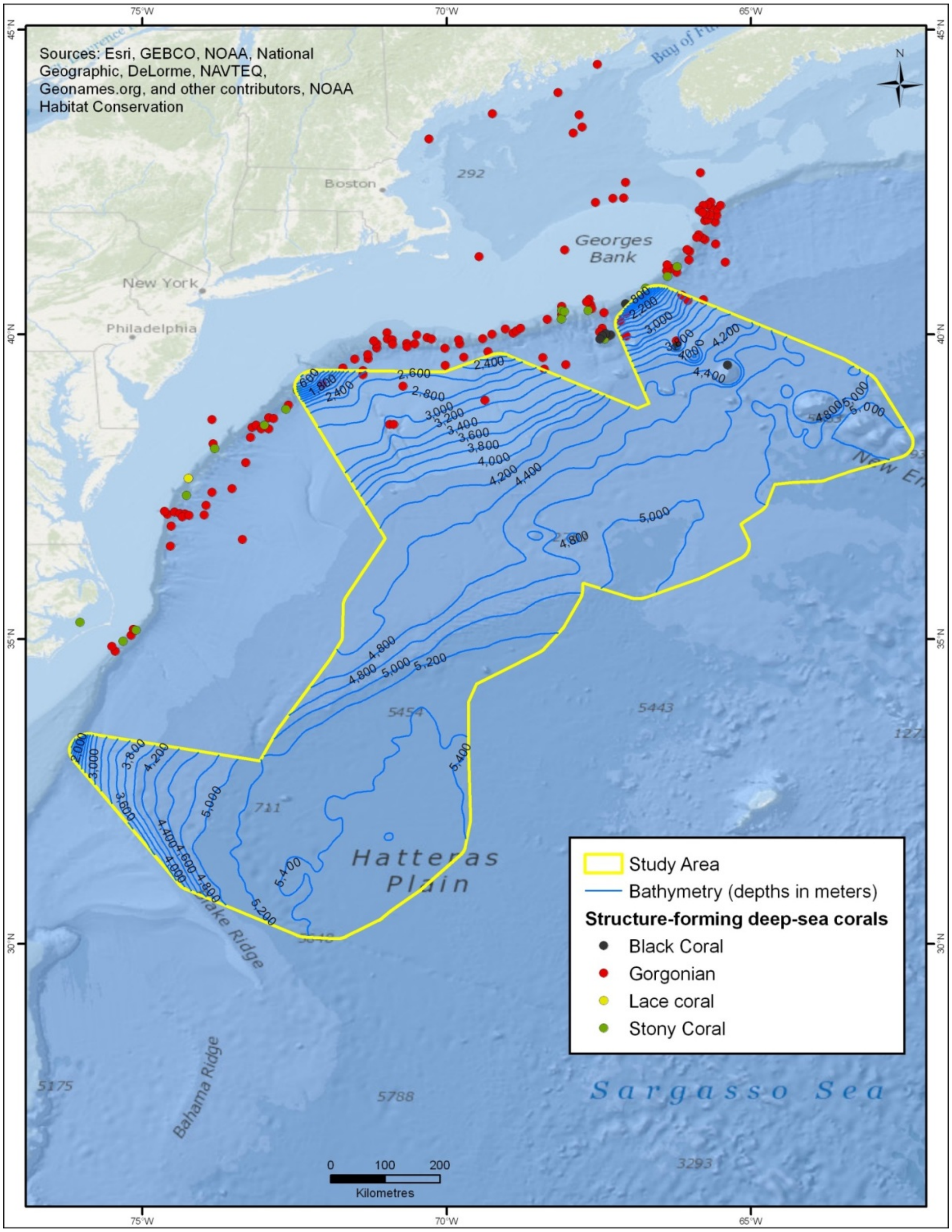


Figure 16: Deep-sea Corals

Deep corals in the northeastern U.S. belong to three major groups. There are the Hexacorals (or Zoantharia), which include the hard or stony corals (Scleractinia); the Ceriantipatharians which includes the black and thorny corals (Antipatharia), and finally there are the Octocorals (or Alcyonaria), with flexible, partly organic skeletons that include the true soft corals (Alcyonacea), gorgonians (Gorgonacea or sea fans and sea whips), and sea pens (Pennatulacea). Among all three groups, there appear to be a suite of species that occurs at depths of less than 500 m (shelf and upper slope), and a separate suite that occurs at depths greater than 500 m (lower slope and rise) (NOAA, n.d.). Population trends for deep-sea corals are not currently available, and therefore population statuses are generally unknown (NOAA NMFS, 2011). Although there are no known coral reefs in the northeast U.S. waters, deep corals can be found from shallow waters to 6,000 m depth, and are most common at depths of 50 to 1,000 m on hard substrate (NOAA NMFS, 2011).

Similar to deep-sea corals, sponges also provide deep-sea habitat, enhance species richness and diversity, and exert clear ecological effects on other local fauna. Sponge grounds and reefs support increased biodiversity compared to structurally-complex abiotic habitats or habitats that do not contain these organisms.

Physical damage or dislodgement of organisms and hard substrate, and/or crushing of corals and sponges can result from: anchoring and/or mooring of floating vessels, and seabed placement of equipment. Given the nature of seismic surveys, survey equipment is not expected to come in contact with the seafloor and deep-water corals and sponges.

3.8.2 Essential Fish Habitat

The proposed Study Area borders the Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf Large Marine Ecosystem (LME) and extends south and east into deeper waters. The LME is considered essential fish habitat (EFH). Section 3.3.2.1 of NSF/USGS PEIS describes the EFH for the Northwest Atlantic DAA. EFH for various life stages of numerous fish species, including Atlantic cod, Atlantic salmon, Atlantic halibut, flounder, hake, herring and other pelagic species, occurs in or proximate to the analysis area extending out to the limit of the U.S. EEZ. Table 4.20 in the BOEM PEIS (2012) lists the Soft Bottom Species and Life Stages with Essential Fish Habitat Identified within the Area of Interest. The Study Area is overlain by sand/silt/clay surficial sediments (Figure 17) – a soft bottom. The demersal species identified with essential fish habitat include scallop, golden crab, red crab, royal red shrimp, offshore hake and witch flounder. The seismic surveys are restricted to surface waters and thus there would be no physical contact or disturbance with EFH.

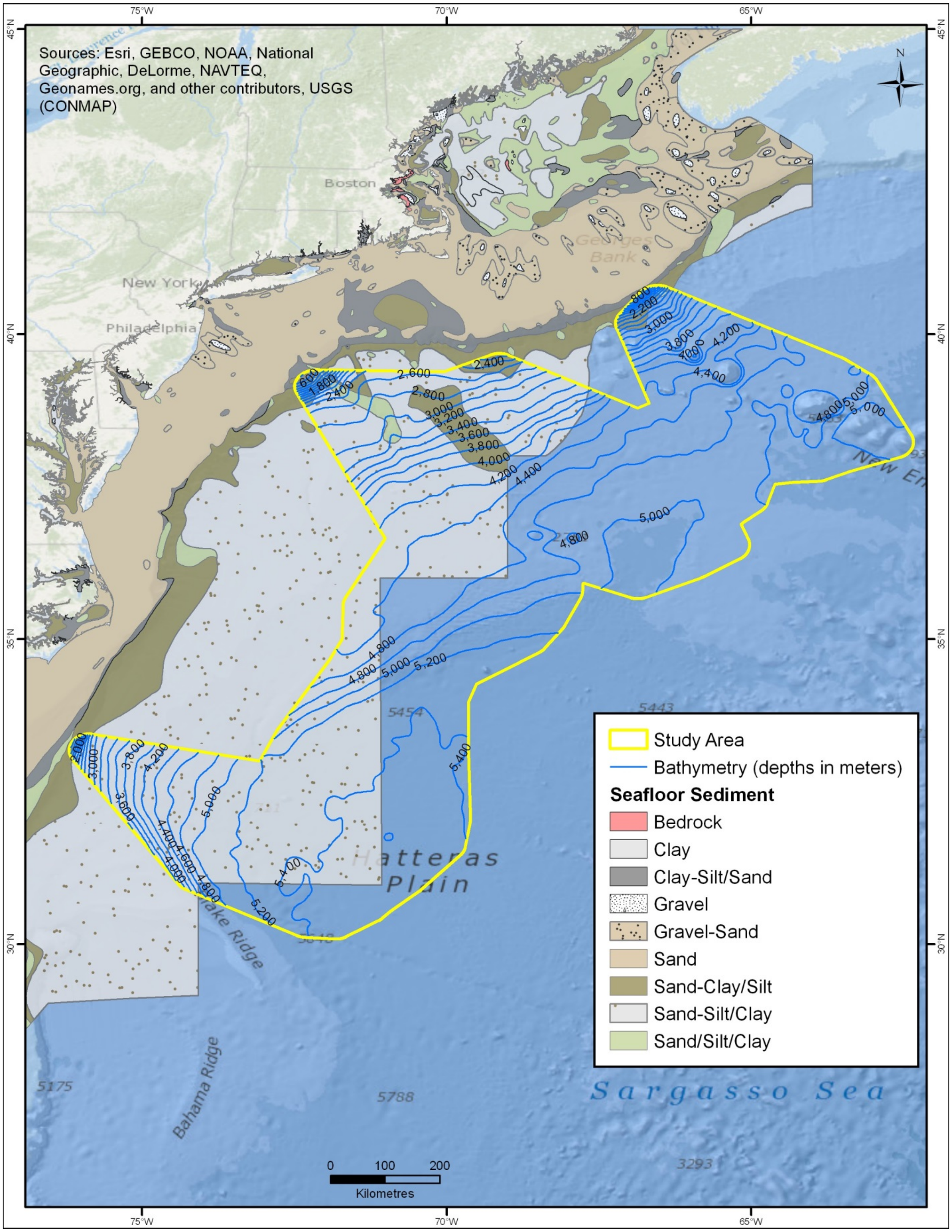


Figure 17: Seafloor Sediment

3.9 SEA TURTLES

General information on the taxonomy, ecology, distribution and movements, and acoustic capabilities of sea turtles are given in Section 3.4 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011). In addition, Section 3.2 of BOEM's PEIS (2012) Biological Assessment reviews similar information for all species of sea turtles which may occur within the proposed Study Area. Figure 18, Figure 19, Figure 20, Figure 21 and Figure 22 show the location based on OBIS sighting data of each of the five species relative to the Study Area.

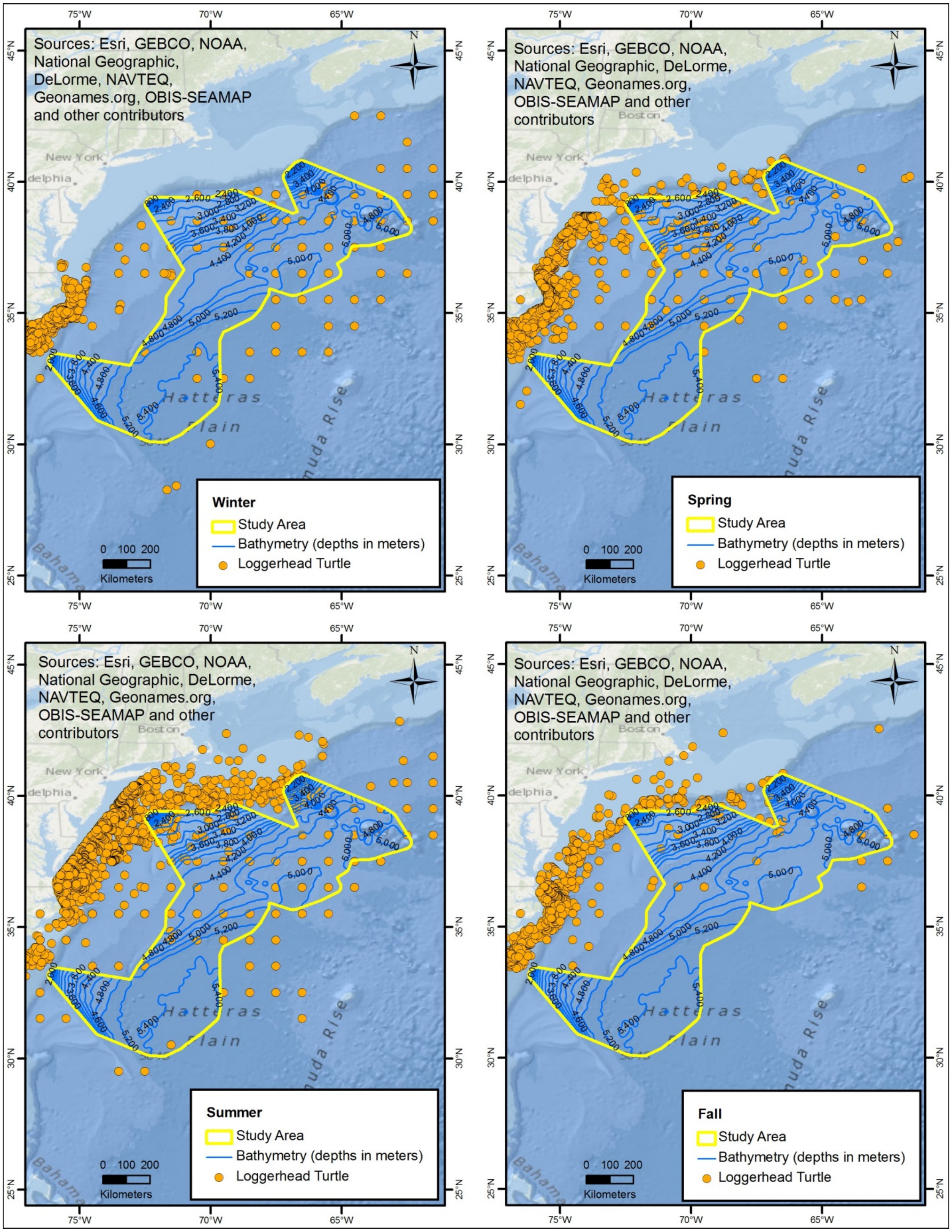


Figure 18: Seasonal Distribution of Loggerhead Turtles (multiyear observations)

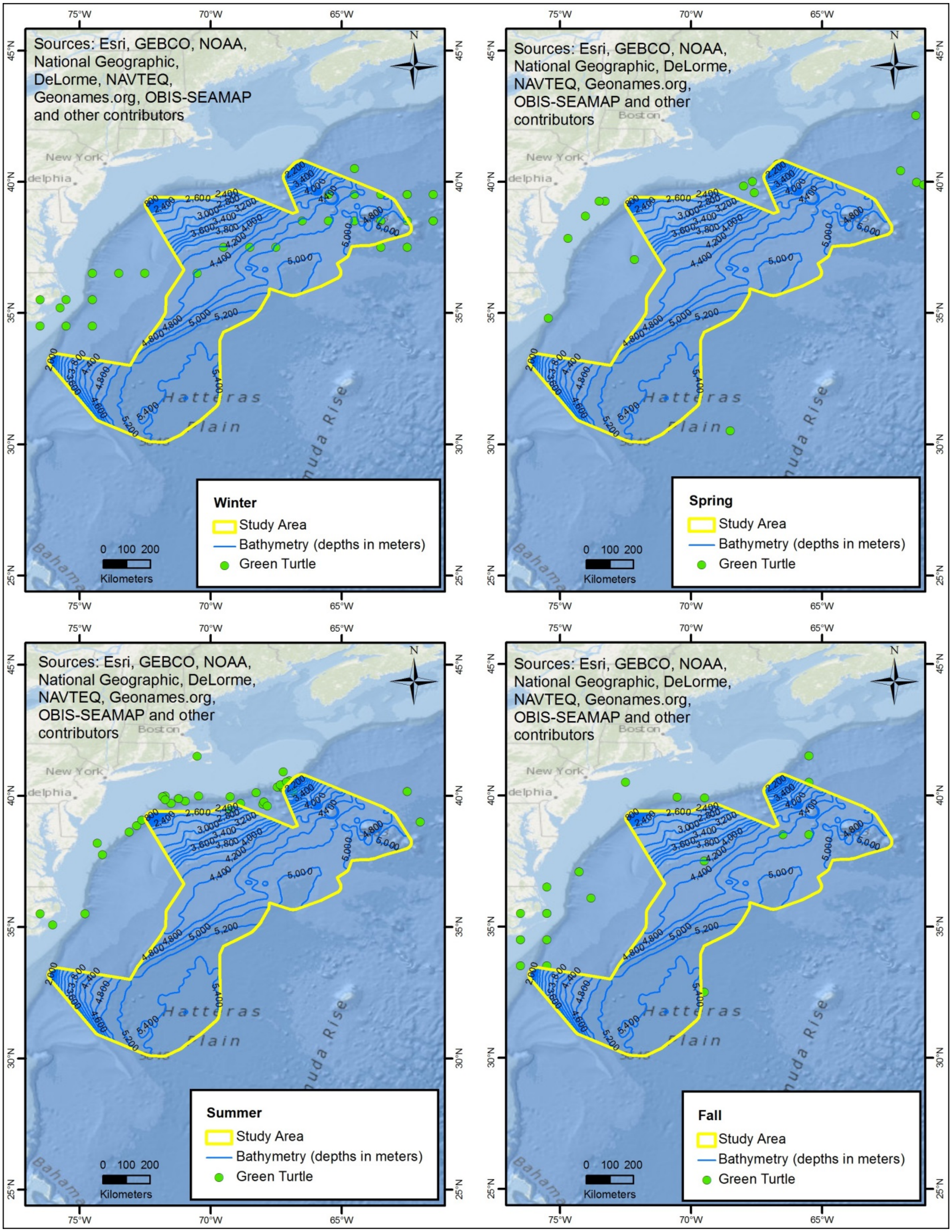


Figure 19: Seasonal Distribution of Green Turtles (multiyear observations)

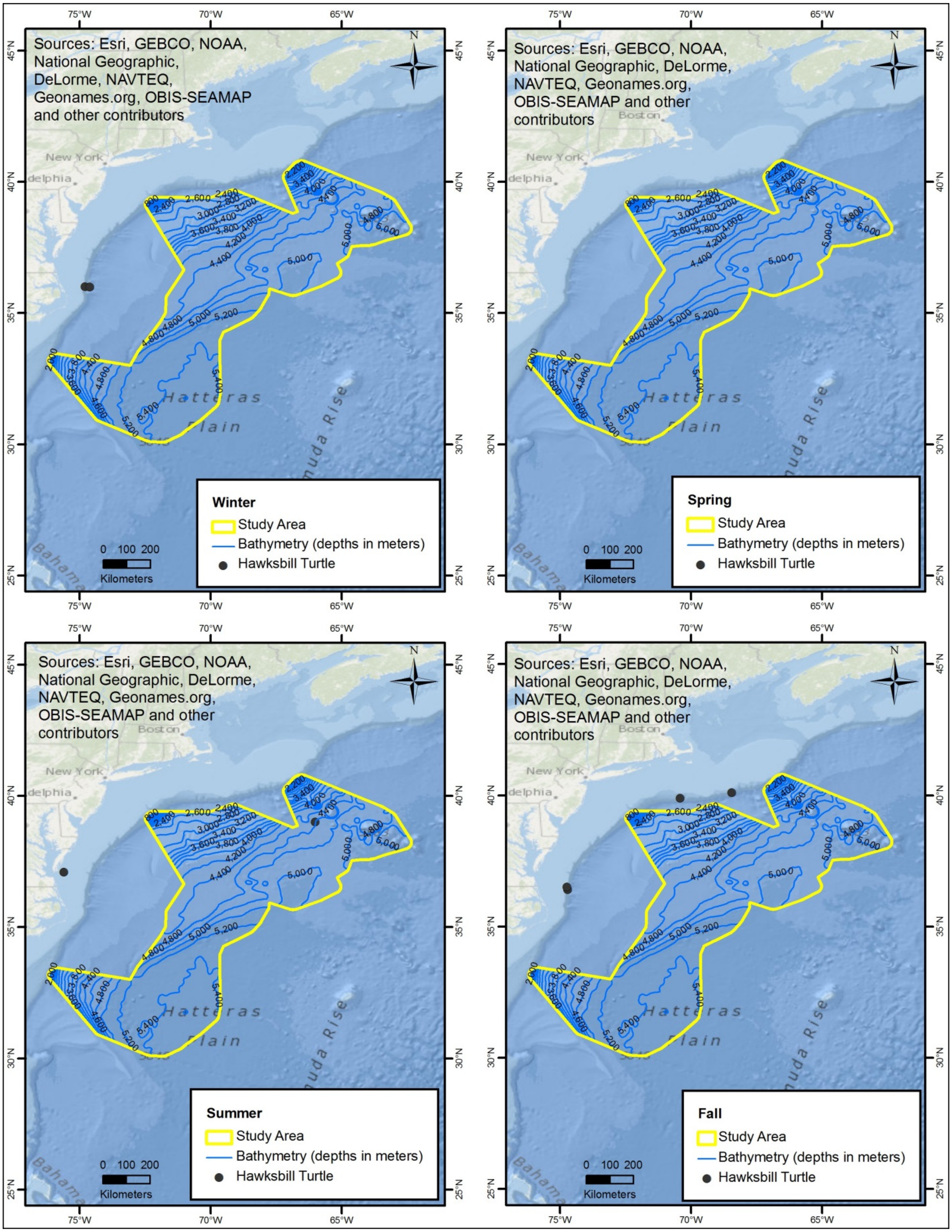


Figure 20: Seasonal Distribution of Hawksbill Turtles (multiyear observations)

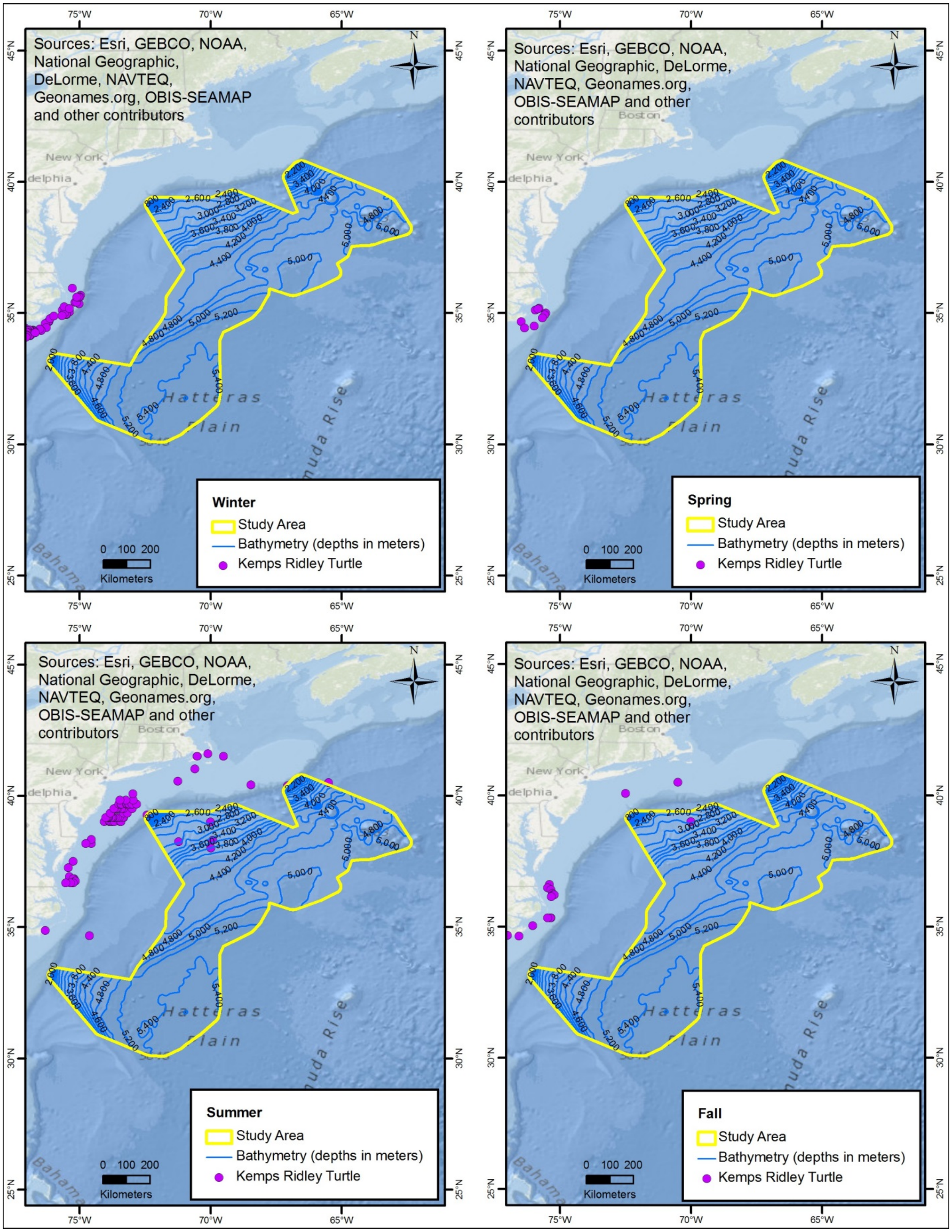


Figure 21: Seasonal Distribution of Kemp's Ridley Turtles (multiyear observations)

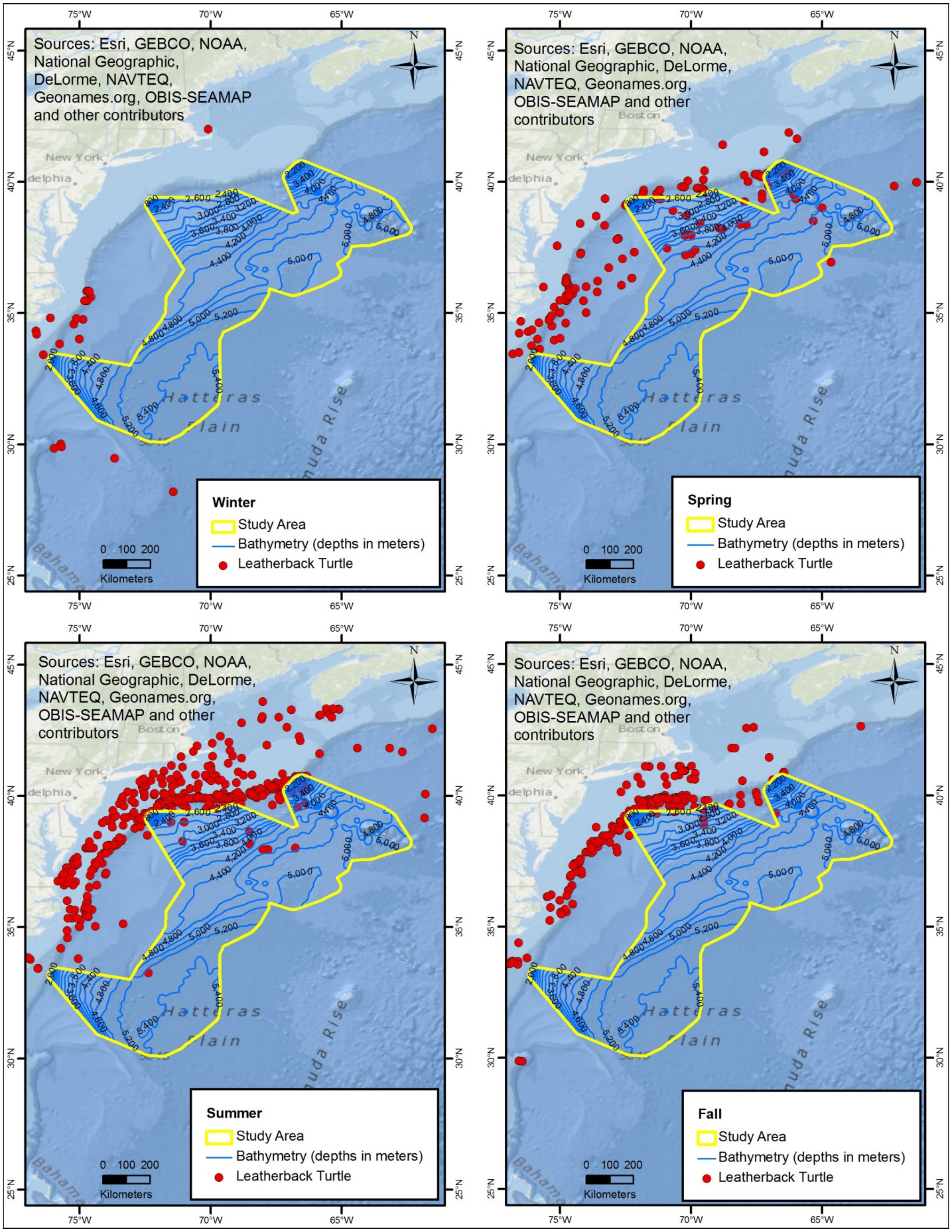


Figure 22: Seasonal Distribution of Leatherback Turtles (multiyear observations)

Table 12 summarizes the habitat, regional abundance, and conservation status of these reptiles. This section describes with their distribution near the proposed Study Area. The main source of information is the OBIS database (Read et al. 2009).

Table 12: ESA-listed Sea Turtles That May Occur the Proposed Study Area

Species (Common Name)	Occurrence near Study Area	Habitat	Estimated Annual Total Nesting Population	Status		
				ESA1	IUCN2	CITES3
Loggerhead	Regular	Oceanic, Coastal, Estuaries	38,334[4]; 68,000-90,000[5;] 9,000-50,000[6]	EN[7], TR[8]	EN	I
Green	Rare	Coastal, seagrass beds	200-1,100[5]	EN[9], TR[10]	EN	I
Hawksbill	Rare	Coral reefs, oceanic, hard bottom habitats	500-1,150[5]	EN	CR	I
Kemps ridley	Rare	Temperate and tropical coastal	5,000[11]	EN	CR	N/A
Leatherback	Regular	Ocean, continental shelf, nearshore	5,215[12]; 906[13]; 26,000-43,000[14]	EN	CR	NA

N/A – Not available or not assessed
U.S. Endangered Species Act: EN = Endangered; TR= Threatened; NL = Not listed (ECOS 2013)
[2] Codes for IUCN classification: EN = Endangered; CR = Critically Endangered; VU = Vulnerable; LC = Least Concern; DD = Data Deficient. Classifications are from the IUCN Red List Threatened Species (IUCN 2012).
[3] Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (UNEP-WCMC 2013); Appendix I = Threatened with Extinction; Appendix II = not necessarily now threatened with extinction by may become so unless trade is closely controlled.
[4] Richards et al. (2011) (Western North Atlantic stock)
[5] NOAA (2013) – In the U.S.
[6] Ernst et al. (1994) – North American Population
[7] Northeast Atlantic Ocean stock
[8] Northwest Atlantic Ocean stock
[9] Breeding population in Florida and on the Pacific coast of Mexico
[10] All other populations
[11] NOAA & FWS (1991)
[12] NMFS and FWS (2008) - Nesting beaches from Florida-Georgia border through southern Virginia
[13] NMFS and FWS (2008) - Nesting beaches from Franklin County on the northwest Gulf coast of Florida through Texas
[14] Dutton et al. (1999) - Worldwide Population

Loggerhead Turtle (*Caretta caretta*)

Loggerhead turtles are likely to be the most present species in the proposed Study Area. OBIS has several thousands of sightings for this species in the waters adjacent to the proposed Study Area. The majority of sightings occurring near the Study Area are off the western extent of its boundaries in the coastal and shelf waters. None the less, there are still hundreds of sightings in the deeper oceanic waters as well. Within the Study Area boundaries, OBIS sightings are ~

200, with the majority occurring in the northwest. Recent sightings include a 2010 record by the North Carolina Long-Term Sea Turtle Monitoring Project, and a 2010 record by the Casey Key Loggerheads survey. The majority of the sightings within the Study Area were made between the months of June and August. However, several winter and spring sightings from Southeast Fishery Science Center (SEFSC) Fisheries Log Book System (FLS) Commercial Pelagic Logbook Data suggest that Loggerheads use this area year-round.

Green Turtle (*Chelonia mydas*)

Although not considered common within the proposed Study Area, the green turtle has been observed within its boundaries. According to OBIS there were 24 sightings of this species, with the majority occurring in the northeast. Eighteen of these sightings were made between November and January, and a majority were reported in January 2004, all within a week of each other by Duke North Atlantic Turtle Tracking. This may indicate that the same specimen was seen time and time again during the study. The other sightings occurred during between June and August.

Hawksbill Turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata*)

The hawksbill turtle is considered rare within the proposed Study Area, with only two reported OBIS sightings. In the adjacent water west of the Study Area, only seven sightings exist in the OBIS database. The two sightings within the Study Area occurred in October, 1992 and June, 1993. Both were logged from NOAAs Southeast Fishery Science Center (SEFSC) Fisheries Log Book System (FLS) Commercial Pelagic Logbook Data.

Kemp's Ridley Turtle (*Lepidochelys kempii*)

Within adjacent waters to the proposed Study Area, the Kemp's Ridley turtle is primarily observed in coastal and shelf waters. Within the Study Area, this species has been observed in shelf and slope waters at its northern extent twice, and northwestern extent five times. All observations were made between May and August with the most recent being in 1998.

Leatherback Turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*)

The OBIS database reports that there are several hundreds of sightings of the leatherback in the vicinity of the proposed Study Area. Within its boundaries there are ~ 100 sightings of these species in the shelf and slope waters in the north and northwest. The majority of the sightings occurred between May and August. However, the NOAAs Southeast Fishery Science Center (SEFSC) Fisheries Log Book System (FLS) Commercial Pelagic Logbook Data has recorded sightings between September and January.

3.10 OCEAN RESOURCE USERS

3.10.1 Navy Operation Areas

Military range complexes and civilian space program use is covered in Appendix A, Section 4.1.3 of BOEM (2012). The Study Area overlaps spatially with the Narragansett Operation Area (Figure 23). Military activities could include various air-to-air, air-to-surface, and surface-to-surface naval fleet training, submarine and antisubmarine training, and Air Force exercises.

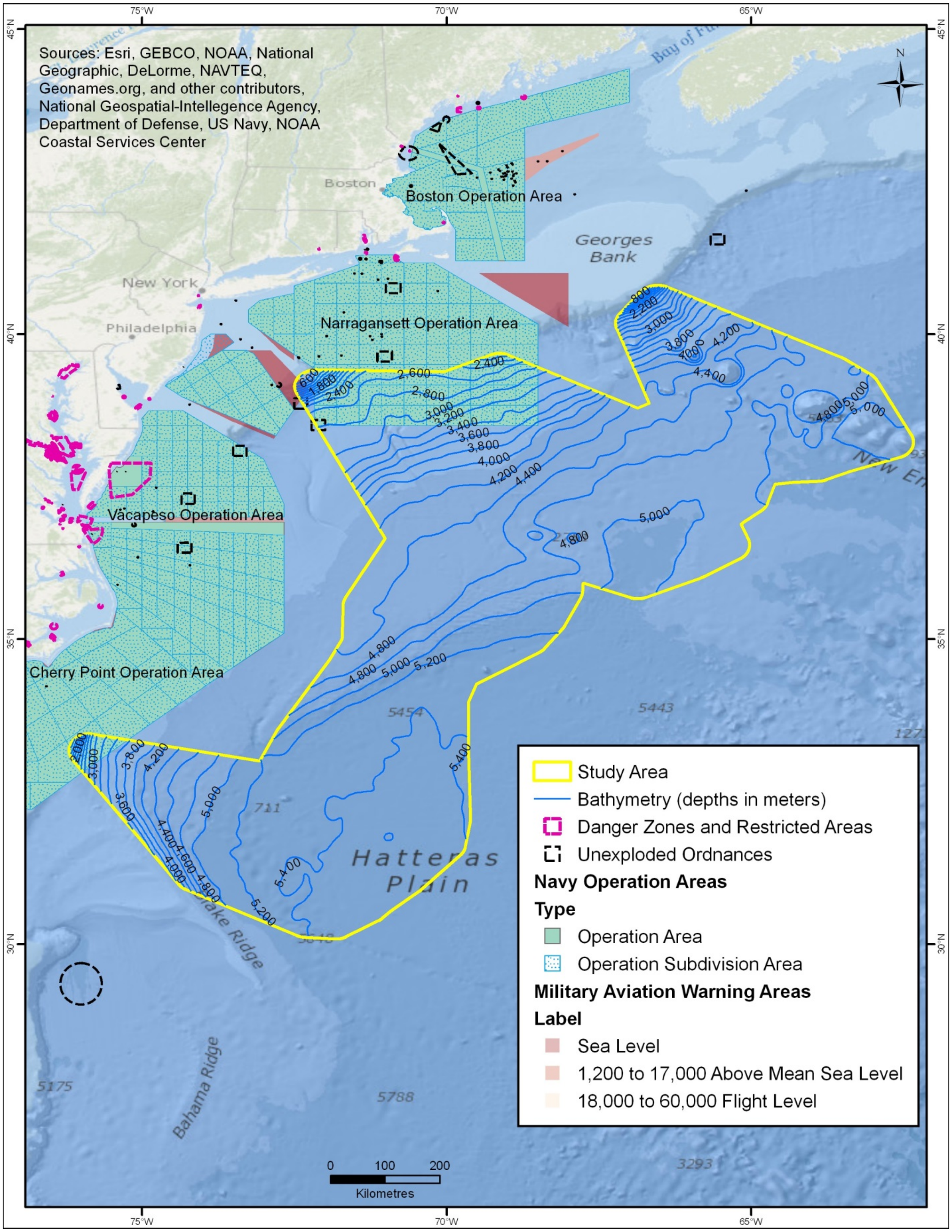


Figure 23: Navy Operation Areas

Unexploded Ordnances

Unexploded ordnance (or UXOs/UXBs, sometimes identified as UO) are explosive weapons (bombs, bullets, shells, grenades, land mines, naval mines, etc.) that did not explode when they were employed and still pose a risk of detonation, potentially many decades after they were used or discarded (DOC, NOAA, NOS, and CSC 2012). As shown in Figure 24 two UOs may exist within the proposed Study Area, and one lies only ~12.4mi (~20-km) of the northern boundary line. This is not a complete collection of unexploded ordnance on the seafloor, nor are the locations to be considered exact (DOC et al. 2012). The presence and locations of the unexploded ordnance have been derived from graphical representations recorded on NOAA Raster Navigation Charts (DOC et al. 2012).

Given that there is no bottom-founded activity associated with seismic surveying there would be no anticipated interaction with the potential UO sites.

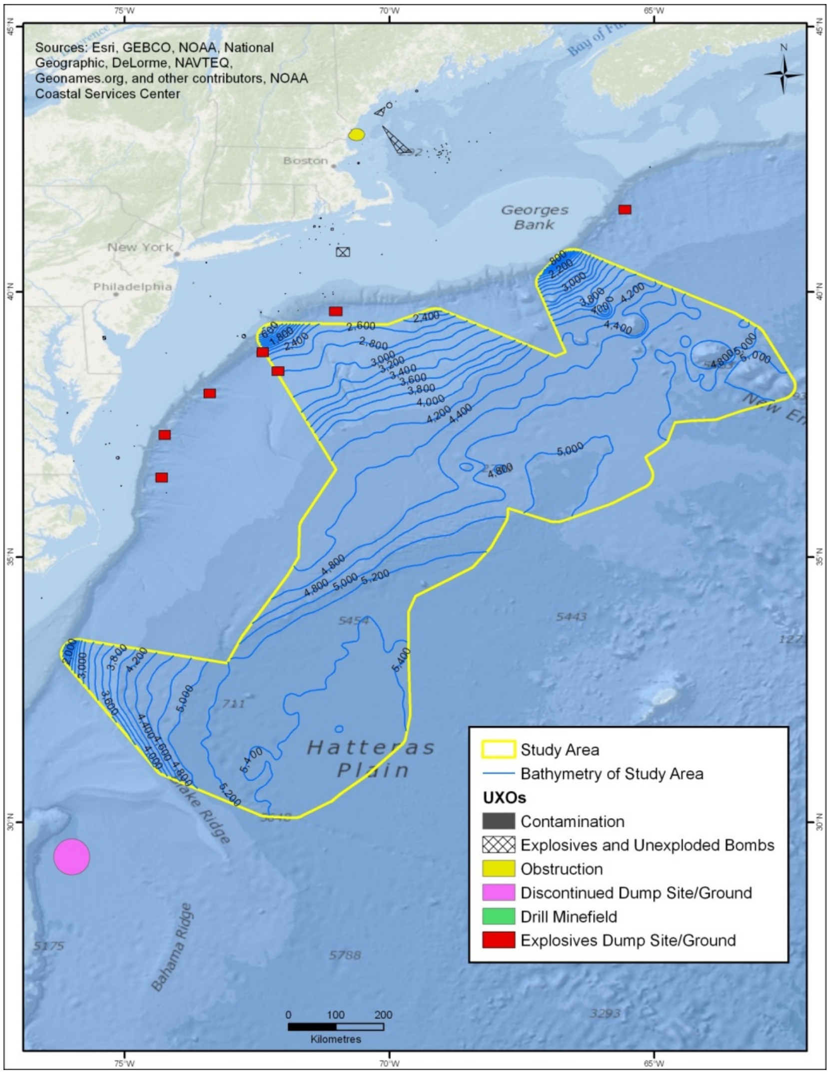


Figure 24: Unexploded Ordnance

3.10.2 Marine Traffic

Shipping and marine transportation is covered in Sections 4.1.1 and 5.10.1.1 of BOEM, 2012 Biological Assessment.

Marine traffic within the proposed Study Area and in adjacent waters includes commercial, military, and recreational shipping and marine transportation. Large commercial ships have designated shipping fairways and navigation channels along the inner shelf (Figure 25).

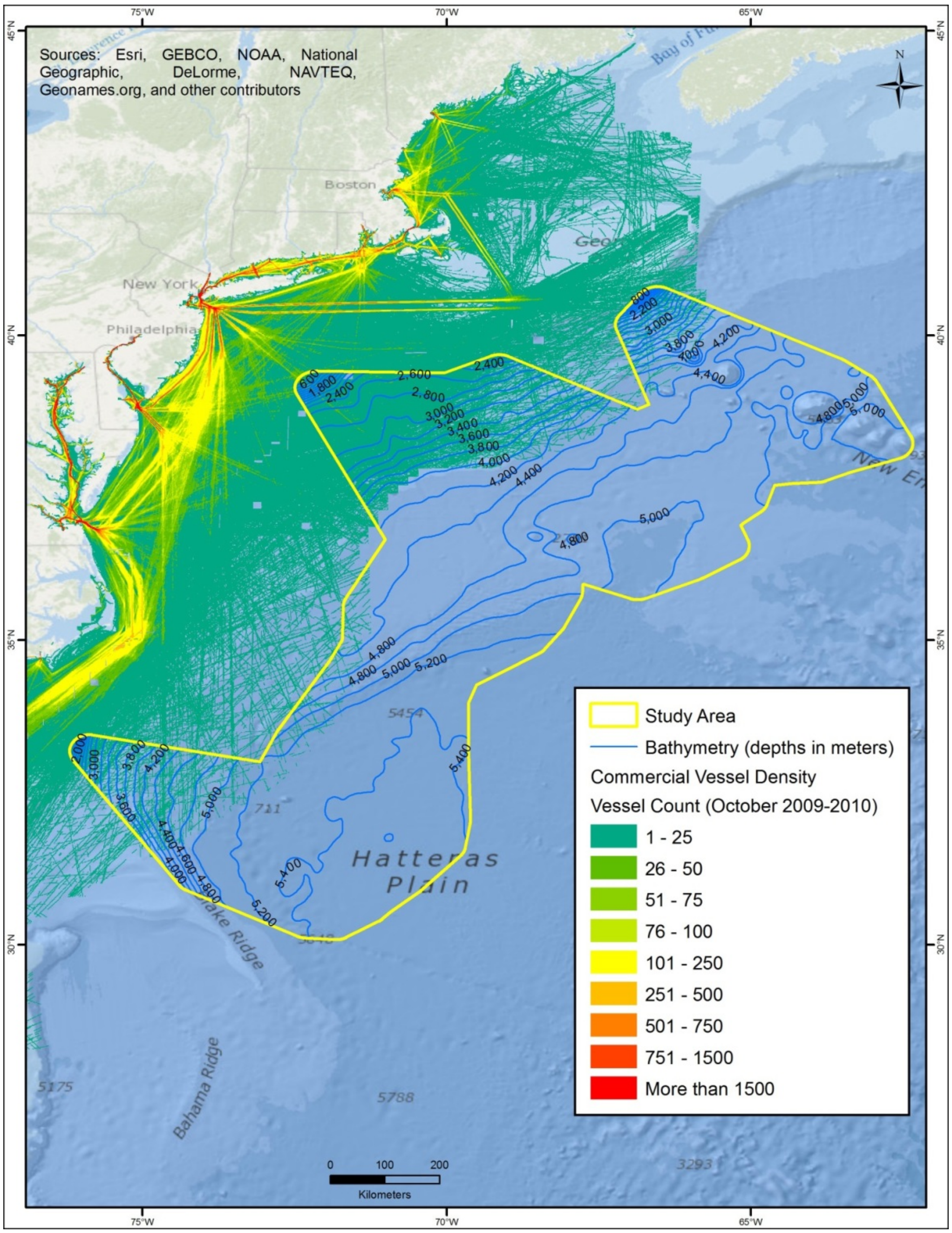


Figure 25: Marine Traffic

The proposed Study Area's western boundary is 808 mi (1300 km) long which situates the Study Area adjacent to six large, commercial ports: New York/New Jersey, Boston, Baltimore, Norfolk, Virginia (Port of Virginia), Wilmington (North Carolina), and Charleston.

The smaller ports and terminals (Figure 26) located in the Delaware River include Wilmington, DE, and Philadelphia, which are accessed via the Delaware Bay. Delaware Bay is about 140 mi (225 km) west of the northwestern extent of the Study Area. Chesapeake Bay, 252 mi (405 km) west of the Study Area boundary, provides access to the Port of Baltimore, including numerous smaller ports in Maryland and Virginia.

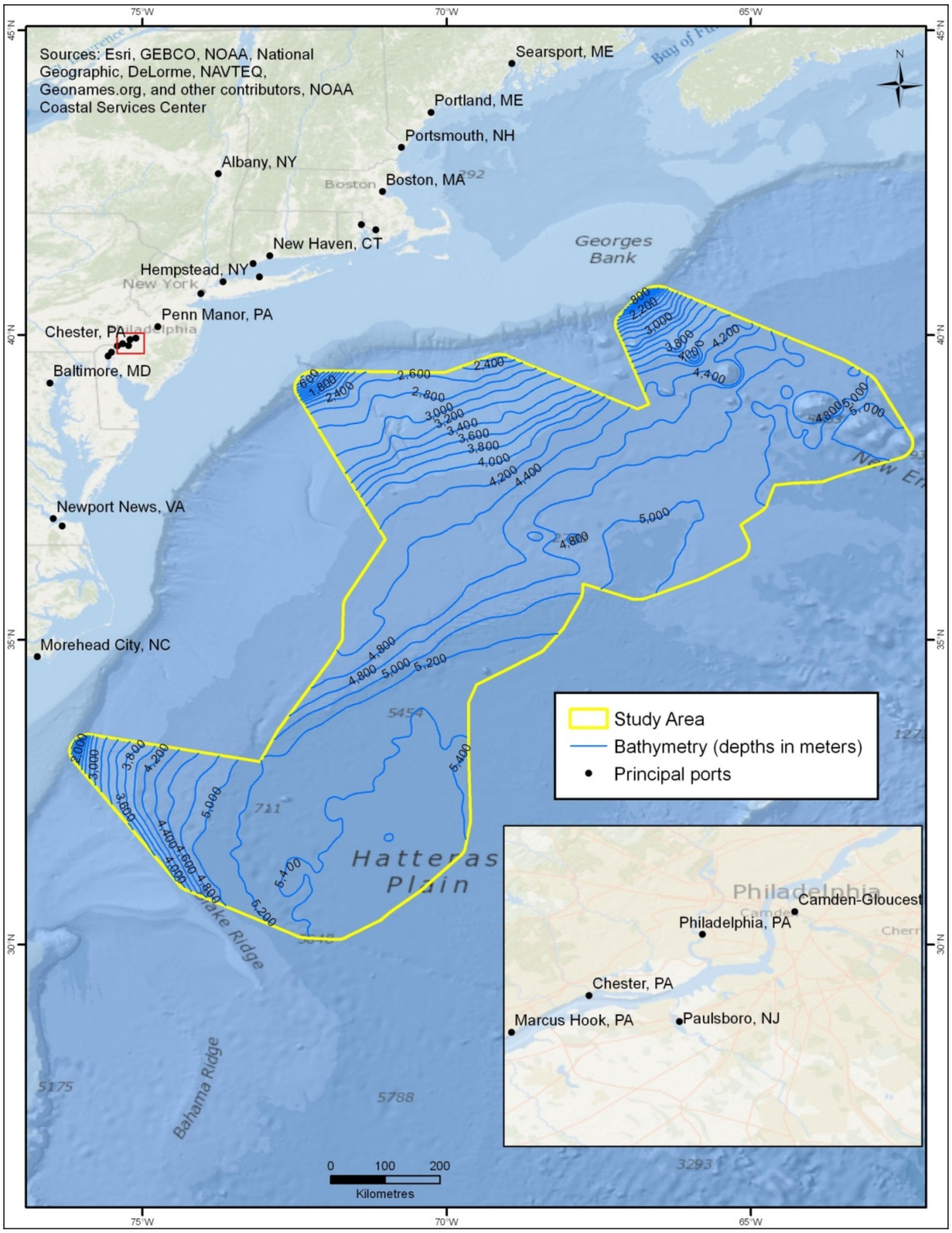


Figure 26: Ports and Terminals

3.10.3 Petroleum

Oil and Gas

Oil and gas exploration and development is covered in Section 4.1.6 of BOEM (2012) Biological Assessment. There are no active oil and gas leases or oil and gas exploration, development or production activities on the Atlantic OCS. This lack of activity is expected to be the status quo for the duration of this project.

Liquefied Natural Gas

Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) is covered in Section 4.1.7 and Section 5.10.1.3 of BOEM (2012) Biological Assessment. Since BOEM (2012), an application from Liberty Natural Gas LLC was received by the Maritime Administration (MARAD) for all Federal authorization required for a license to construct, own, and operate an LNG deepwater port, known as Port Ambrose (Figure 27). This application was received on September 28, 2012. The port would be situated in Federal waters approximately 17 nm (31.4 km) southeast of Jones Beach, New York, approximately 24 nm (44.4 km) east of Long Branch, New Jersey, and about 27 nm (50 km) from the entrance to New York Harbor, in a water depth of approximately 103-ft (31.4 m). The application was deemed complete in June 2013 and public scoping meetings were held during the summer of 2013.

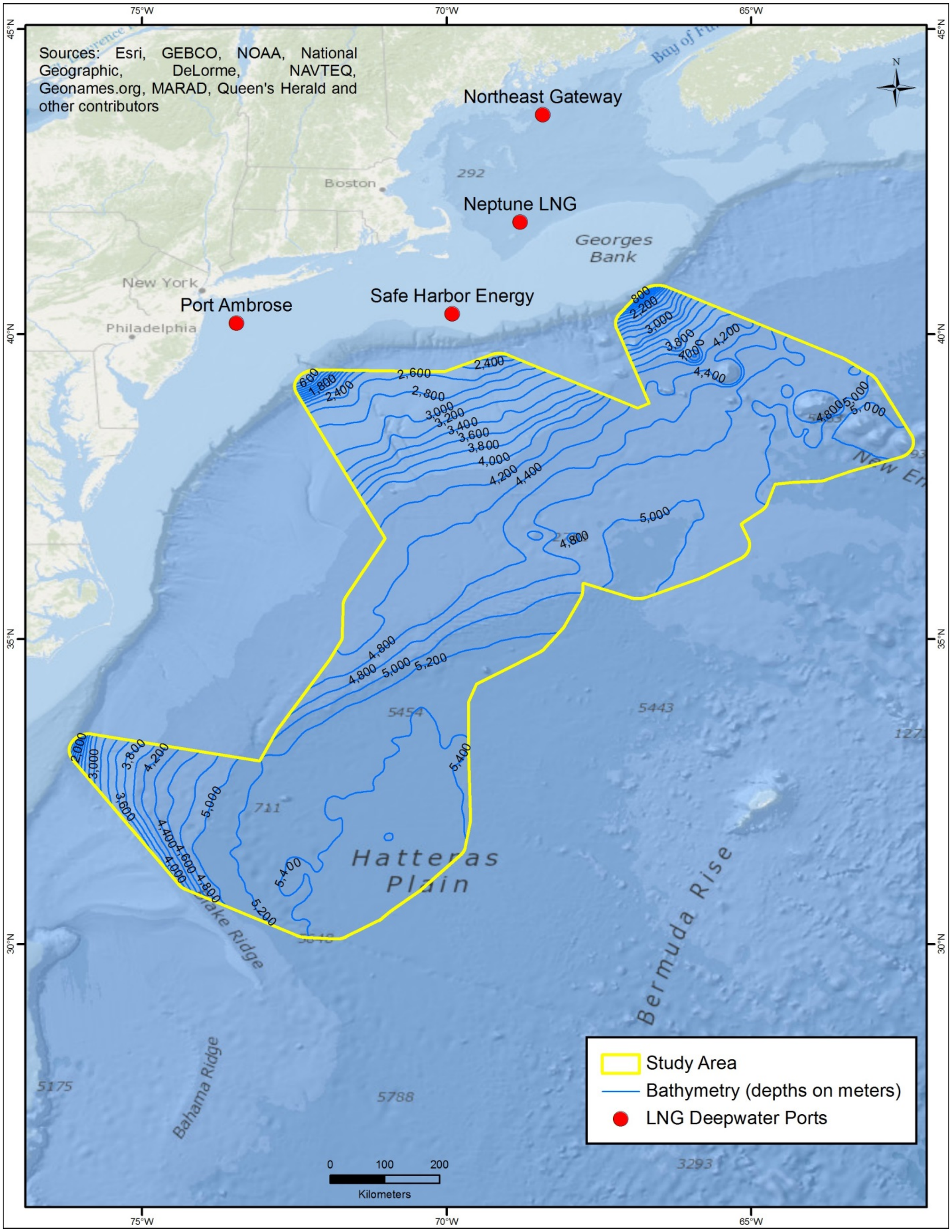


Figure 27: LNG Deepwater Ports

Also since BOEM (2012) PEIS was published, the operational LNG deepwater port, Neptune requested by letter dated May 24, 2012, that the MARAD allow a temporary five-year suspension of operations at the Deepwater Port. The MARAD issued an amended deepwater port license to allow the five-year suspension of operations.

Therefore, for this project's operation period of 2014 and 2015, it is expected that only one LNG deepwater port (Northeast Gateway) would be in operation. Figure 27 delineates the three LNG deepwater ports relative to the Study Area.

3.10.4 Submarine Cables

The submarine cable industry has been around for approximately 150 years and includes copper telegraph cables, telephone cables and fiber-optic cables. Figure 28 depicts the locations of these submarine cables in and around U.S. navigable waters, including in the Proposed Study Area. The interactive map indicates that there are at least 12 active submarine cables within the proposed Study Area. The majority of the cables are found in the northern extent of the Study Area.

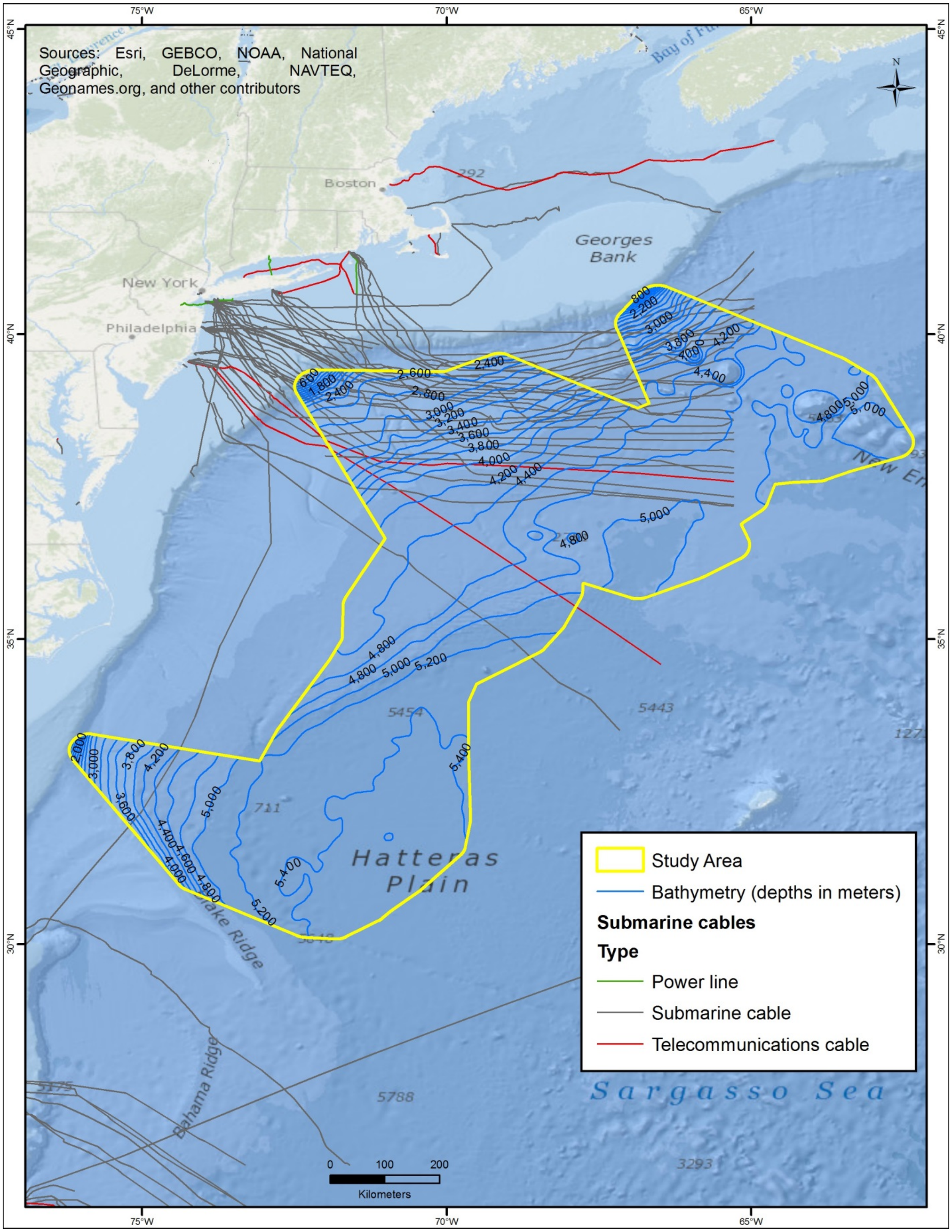


Figure 28: Submarine Cables

According to the interactive map found at (http://www.submarinecablemap.com/) and maintained by TeleGeography, the 6,524 mi (10,500 km) cable with a ready-for-service date of 2015 is planned between Brazil and New York by Seaborn Networks. The cable route intersects the proposed Study Area, therefore, there is a very remote possibility of interaction between the seismic vessel and the cable laying vessel.

Given that there is no bottom-founded activity associated with seismic surveying, the project would neither impact existing cable operations, nor be impacted by existing submarine cables.

3.10.5 Commercial and Recreational Fisheries

The Project area supports nationally and internationally important commercial fisheries. Because of the distance from shore, recreational fishing effort and landings for the Project area are extremely limited. As a result, some of the information provided in this section includes recreational catch data as reported by U.S. (NOAA) and international organizations, such as the 2012 Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) Report for Atlantic Highly Migratory Specie. From 2008-2012, commercial fishermen, using multiple gear types, recorded over 1.2 million hours fishing, landing approximately 114,000 metric tons (252 million pounds) of fish from the 14 NMFS Statistical Areas that are associated with the Project area (NOAA 2013a). In further offshore portions of the Project area, the primary commercial species sought are classified as highly migratory species (HMS), i.e., species that are generally found in the offshore pelagic environment beyond the continental shelf. HMS are characterized as having vast geographical distributions, with extensive individual migrations often spanning entire oceans (Lynch et al. 2011). The National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) works with other nations through the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tuna (ICCAT) to manage these globally distributed species through a catch quota system for each member country. In the U.S., tuna and billfish recommendations from ICCAT are implemented by the NMFS division of HMS under the Atlantic Tuna Convention Act and Magnuson-Stevens Act. The Fishery Conservation Amendments of 1990 classified tuna and billfish to be highly migratory species. In 1996, the Sustainable Fisheries Act modified the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act to create advisory panels that aid in creating fishery management plans to manage billfishes and HMS. Responsibilities of the panels include lowering bycatch and mortality related to bycatch, and stopping overfishing (NOAA 2009).

Another commercial species sought just within the Project area is the deep-sea red crab (*Chaceon quinquedens*). The red crab occurs in a patchy distribution from Nova Scotia to Florida and is found primarily within a 200 to1,800-meter depth band along the continental shelf and slope, but the highest densities and biomass occur between 320 and 910 meters (Figure 29) (New England Fishery Management Council [NEFMC] 2011). The species is also reported to occur in the deep-water canyons along the coast, including Norfolk, Hudson, Hydrographer, and Oceanographer Canyons. In 2002, the NEFMC implemented the Deep Sea Red Crab Fishery Management Plan (NEFMC 2002). Under the plan, a limited access fishery was implemented, with the fishery authorized to operate with a target total allowable catch (TAC) of 2,688 mt (5.928 million pounds), a 780 days-at-sea allocation, and a trip limit of 34 mt (75,000 pounds). The red crab population in U.S. North Atlantic waters, between Georges Bank and Cape Hatteras, is managed as a single stock.

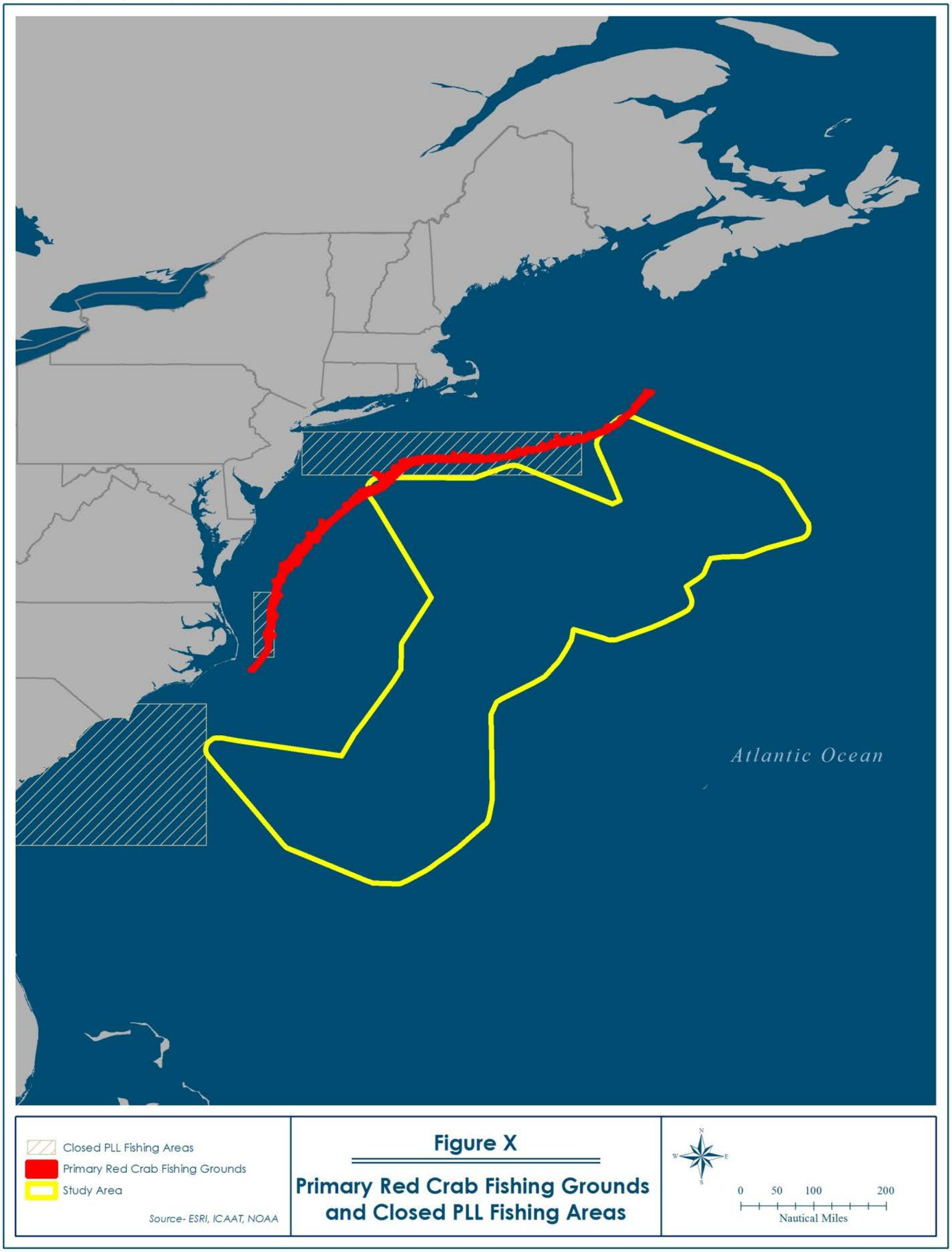


Figure 29: Primary Red Crab Fishing Grounds and Closed PLL Areas

3.10.5.1 Highly Migratory Species

Commercial HMS fisheries in the Project area primarily use pelagic long line (PLL) fishing gear, but other fishing gears include purse seines, handgear (handlines and harpoons), and gillnets (i.e., for sharks). Traps were historically used for HMS, but this method is not employed currently. The list of authorized fishing gear used in HMS fisheries became effective December 1, 1999 (64 FR 67511) and has been modified several times in subsequent final rules. As stated in the rule, "no person or vessel may employ fishing gear or participate in a fishery in the exclusive economic zone (EEZ) not included in this List of Fisheries without giving 90 days' advance notice to the appropriate Fishery Management Council (Council) or, with respect to Atlantic HMS, the Secretary of Commerce (Secretary)." The greatest cumulative percentage of landings within the Project area are associated with PLL, purse seining, and hand gear. As such, only these three fishing methods are discussed in detail in later sections.

The primary species taken in HMS fisheries include swordfish, wahoo, dolphin, eight tuna species (albacore [*Thunnus alalunga*], Atlantic bluefin tuna [*T. thunnus*], bigeye tuna [*T. obesus*], blackfin tuna [*T. atlanticus*], bonito [*Sarda sarda*], little tunny (*Euthynnus alletteratus*), skipjack tuna [*Katsuwonus pelamis*], and yellowfin tuna [*T. albacares*]), and various species of pelagic sharks (e.g., shortfin mako shark [*Isurus oxyrinchus*]).

In order to minimize bycatch and bycatch mortality in the domestic PLL fishery, NMFS implemented regulations to close certain areas of the Atlantic to this gear type (see Figure 29). Historic (1950's-2010) catch levels for predominant species by gear type within portions of the Project area are presented in Figure 30, Figure 31 and Figure 32.

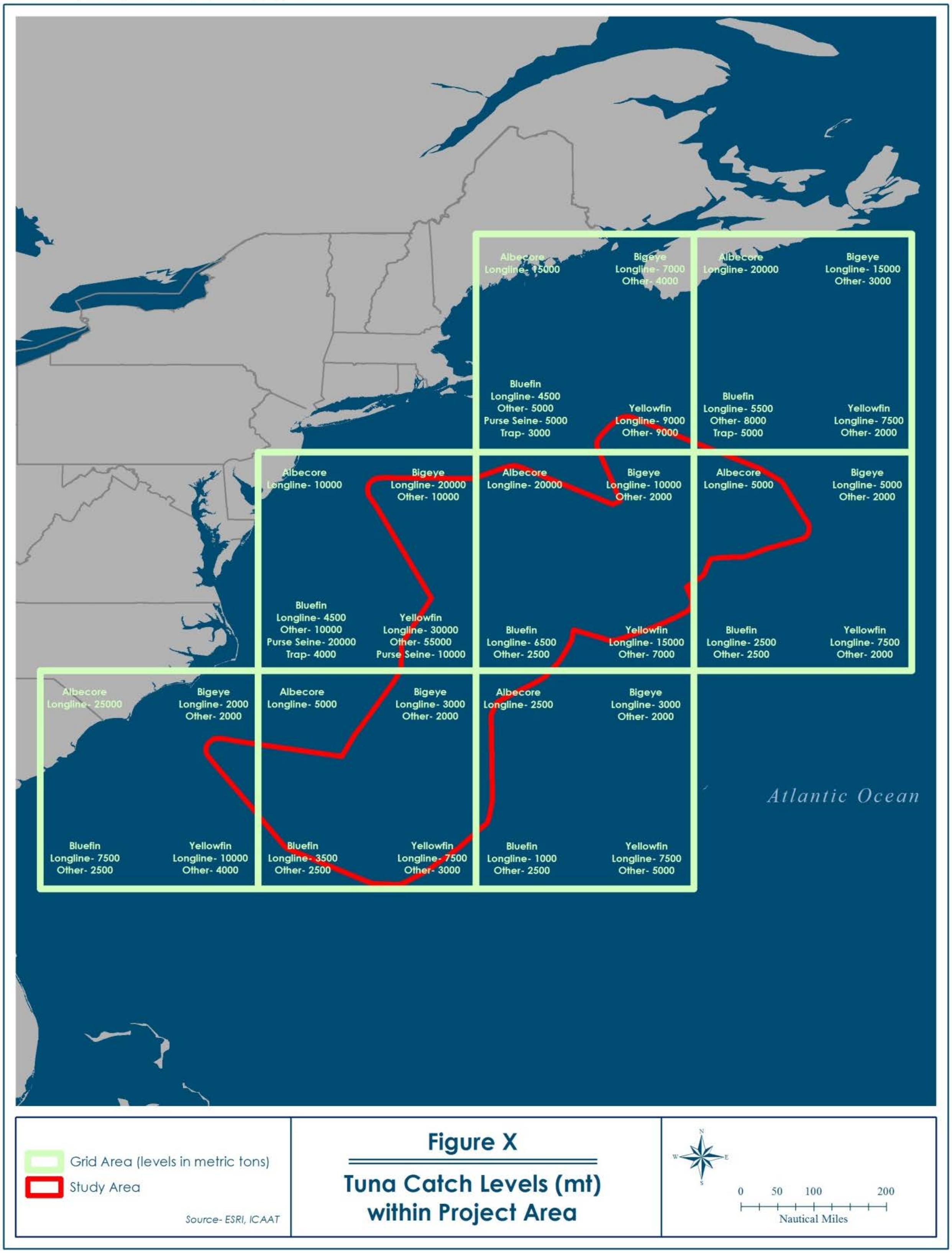


Figure 30: Tuna Catch Levels (mt) within the Project Area

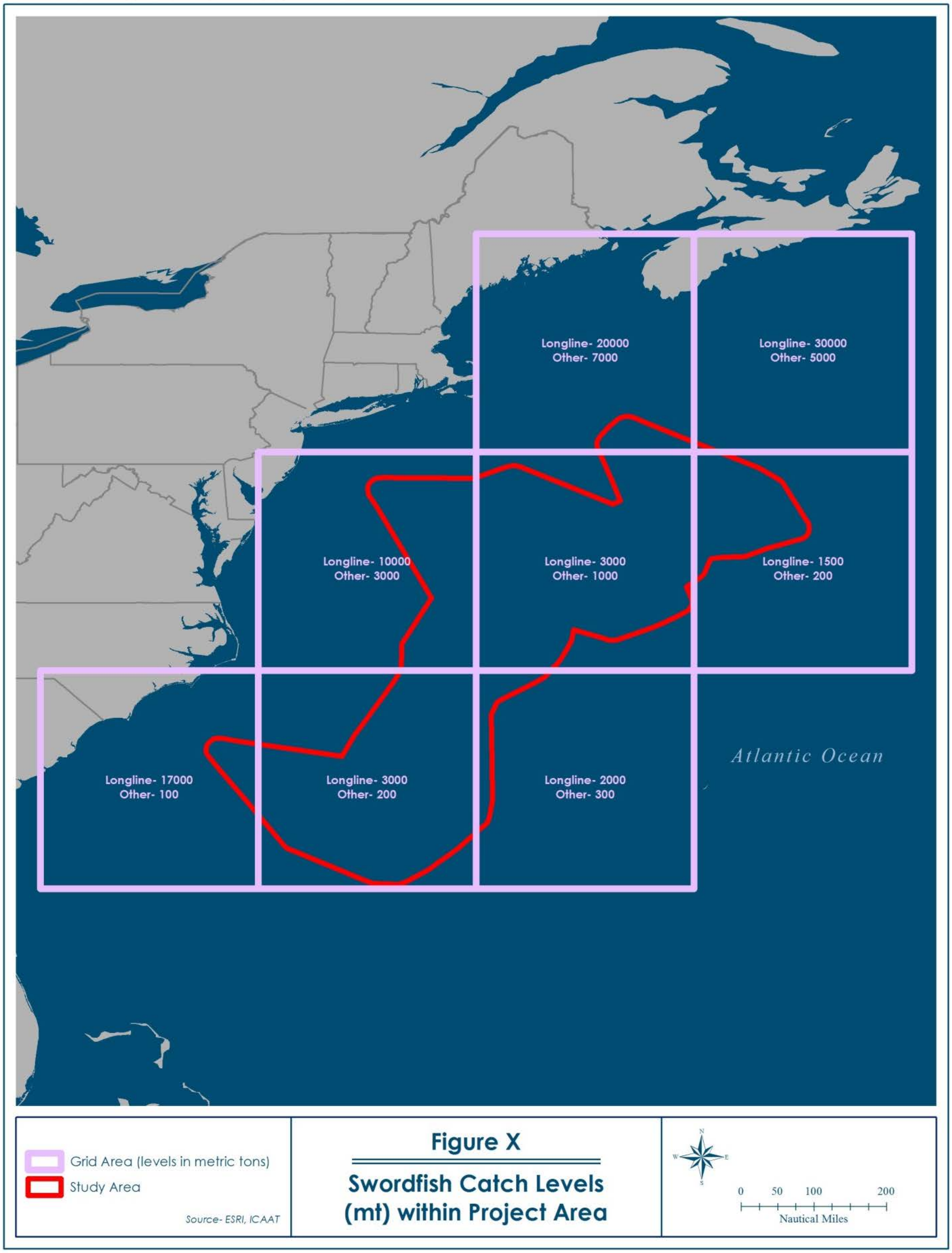


Figure 31: Swordfish Catch Levels (mt) within the Project Area

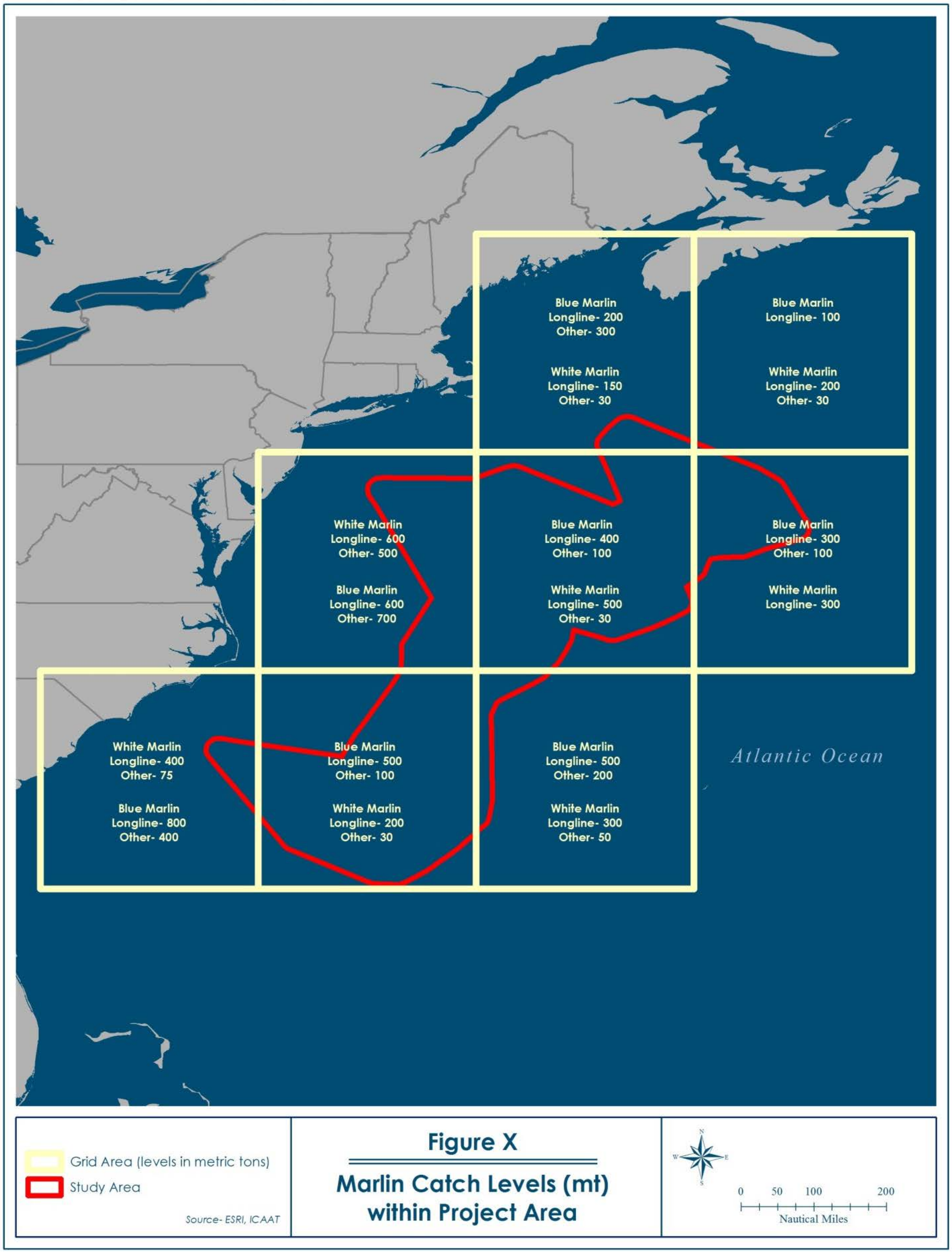


Figure 32: Marlin Catch Levels (mt) within the Project Area

3.10.5.2 Pelagic Longlines (PLL)

The PLL fishery for Atlantic HMS primarily targets swordfish, blue fin tuna, yellowfin tuna, and bigeye tuna in various areas and seasons. Secondary target species include dolphin, albacore tuna, and, to a lesser degree, sharks. Although this gear can be modified (e.g., depth of set, hook type, hook size, bait, etc.) to target swordfish, tunas, or sharks, it is generally a multi-species fishery. PLL vessel operators are opportunistic, switching gear style and making subtle changes to target the best available economic opportunity on each individual trip. PLL gear sometimes attracts and hooks non-target finfish with little or no commercial value as well as regulated species, e.g., billfish, which cannot be retained by commercial fishermen. PLL gear may also interact with protected species such as marine mammals, sea turtles, and seabirds. Thus, this gear has been classified as a Category I fishery with respect to the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA). Any species that cannot be landed due to fishery regulations (or undersized catch of permitted species) is required to be released, regardless of whether the catch is dead or alive.

Commercial fishing vessels set PLL gear to target swordfish at sunset and retrieve gear around sunrise, while the opposite pattern is followed for tuna; gear is set at sunrise and retrieved in the afternoon before sunset. The longline fishery for tuna and swordfish is active year-round in the Project area, but most of the commercial fishing effort is in the spring through fall, when the weather is better. Commercial fishermen targeting HMS fisheries with pelagic longline gear generally set their gear in association with the Gulf Stream; pelagic longline sets can be made on the east or west side of the Gulf Stream current, which varies daily. Pelagic longline fishing vessels are mobile, so commercial fishing activity can occur far away (322 to 483 km [200 to 300 mi]) from their respective ports of call.

The U.S. PLL fleet represents a small fraction of the international PLL fleet that competes on the high seas for catches of tuna and swordfish. In recent years, the proportion of U.S. PLL landings of HMS, for the fisheries in which the U.S. participates, has remained relatively stable in proportion to international landings (NOAA 2012). Historically, the U.S. fleet has accounted for less than 0.5% of the landings of swordfish and tuna from the Atlantic Ocean south of 5° N. Lat. U.S. Atlantic PLL catch is primarily associated with vessel characteristics and gear configuration. Table 13 provides a summary of U.S. Atlantic PLL landings, as reported to the ICCAT. Catch levels using PLL for predominant species in portions of the Project area are presented in Figure 30, Figure 31 and Figure 32.

Within the area where the U.S. PLL fleet operates, longline landings still represent a limited fraction of total landings. In recent years (2002 to 2011), U.S. landings have averaged only 5% of total Atlantic longline landings. In 1998, U.S. fishermen accounted for only 1% to 3% of the Atlantic billfish fishing mortality (depending on species). The U.S. fishery accounts for variable proportions of the Atlantic-wide tuna mortality: 47% for West Atlantic bluefin tuna, almost 4% for yellowfin tuna, and a much smaller proportion of skipjack, bigeye tuna, and albacore tuna mortality. The U.S. accounts for approximately 25% of the North Atlantic swordfish catch as described below in Table 13 .

Table 13: Reported Landings (mt) in the U.S. Atlantic Pelagic Longline Fishery (2002-2011)

Species	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Yellowfin tuna	2,573.0	2,164.0	2492.2	1,746.2	2,009.9	2,394.5	1,324.5	1,700.1	1,188.8	1,468.6
Skipjack tuna	2.5	1.4	0.7	0.6	0.2	0.02	1.45	0.5	1.4	0.7
Bigeye tuna	535.8	283.9	310.1	311.9	520.6	380.7	407.7	430.1	443.2	627.1
Bluefin tuna*	49.9	133.9	180.1	211.5	204.6	164.3	232.6	335.0	238.7	220.4
Albacore tuna	155.0	107.6	120.4	108.5	102.9	126.8	126.5	158.3	159.9	267.6
Swordfish North Atlantic.*	2,598.8	2,756.3	2,518.5	2,272.8	1,960.8	2,474.0	2,353.6	2,691.3	2,206.2	2,681.2
Swordfish South Atlantic.*	199.9	20.5	15.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.3	0.0

*Includes landings and estimated discards from scientific observer and logbook sample programs.
As reported in NOAA 2012.

The U.S. percentage of regional and total catch of HMS species is presented here to provide a basis for comparison of the U.S. catch relative to other nations/entities (Table 14). International catch levels and U.S. reported catches for HMS (other than sharks) are taken from the 2012 Standing Report for ICCAT's Standing Committee for Research and Science (SCRS 2012). Because the SCRS data collection is reported by species, Table 14 represents a summary of U.S. and international HMS catches by species rather than gear type. Catch of billfish includes both recreational landings and dead discards from commercial fisheries; bluefin tuna includes commercial landings and dead discards and recreational landings; and swordfish includes recreational landings and commercial landings and dead discards. Data necessary to compare the U.S. regional and total percentage of international catch levels for most Atlantic shark species are currently unavailable.

Table 14: U.S. vs. International Catch of HMS Reported to ICCAT in 2011

Species	Total International Reported Catch (mt ww)	Region	Total Regional Catch (mt ww)	U.S. Catch (mt ww)	U.S. Percentage of Regional Catch	U.S. Percentage of Total Atlantic Catch
Atlantic swordfish	25,599	North Atlantic South Atlantic	12,836 12,763	2,887 0	22.5 0.0	11.20
Atlantic bluefin tuna	11,765	West Atlantic East Atlantic/Med.	1,986 9,779	883 0	44.4 0.0	7.50
Atlantic bigeye tuna	77,795	Atlantic/Med.	77,795	746	0.95	0.95
Atlantic yellowfin tuna	100,277	West Atlantic East Atlantic/Med.	19,408 80,869	3,015 0	15.5 0.0	3.00
Atlantic albacore tuna	48,733	North Atlantic South Atlantic/Med.	19,995 28,738	449 0	2.24 0.0	0.92
Atlantic skipjack tuna	212,668	West Atlantic East Atlantic/Med.	39,324 173,344	84 0	0.2 0.0	0.03
Atlantic blue marlin	1,918	North Atlantic South Atlantic	927 991	56 0	6.0 0.0	2.90
Atlantic white marlin	346	North Atlantic South Atlantic	165 181	25 0	15.1 0.0	7.20
Atlantic sailfish	1,623	West Atlantic East Atlantic	566 1,057	14 0	2.5 0.0	0.90
Blue sharks	29,362	North Atlantic South Atlantic/Med.	11,548 17,814	1,183 0	10.2 0.0	4.00
Porbeagle sharks	94	North Atlantic South Atlantic/Med.	72 21	12 0	16.6 0.0	12.80
Shortfin mako sharks	3,855	North Atlantic South Atlantic/Med.	2,154 1,701	408 0	19.0 0.0	10.60

Source: SCRS 2012.

3.10.5.3 Purse Seine

Purse seine gear consists of a floated and weighted encircling net that is closed by means of a drawstring, known as a purseline, threaded through rings attached to the bottom of the net. The efficiency of this gear can be enhanced by the assistance of spotter planes used to locate schools of tuna. The bluefin tuna baseline percentage quota share for the purse seine category is 18.6% of the U.S. quota. The purse seine fishery is managed under a limited entry system with non-transferable individual vessel quotas (IVQ), excluding any new entrants into this category. Vessels participating in the Atlantic tunas purse seine fishery are required to target the larger size class bluefin tuna—more specifically—the giant size class (≥ 81 inches) and are granted a tolerance limit for large medium size class bluefin tuna (73 to < 81 inches) (i.e., large medium catch may not exceed 15% by weight of the total amount of giant bluefin tuna landed during a season). These vessels may begin fishing on July 15 of each year and may continue through December 31, provided the vessel has not fully attained its IVQ. Over the last few years the purse seine category has not fully harvested its allocated bluefin tuna quota. In 2008, 2010, and 2011, the purse seine category did not harvest any Atlantic tunas (Table 15). The U.S. purse seine fleet has historically accounted for a small percentage of the total international Atlantic tuna landings. Table 15 shows that since 2004, the U.S. purse seine fishery has contributed to less than 0.10% of the total purse seine landings reported to ICCAT. Historic (1950s to 2010) catch levels of predominant species using purse seines in portions of the Project Area are presented in Figure 30, Figure 31 and Figure 32.

Table 15: Estimated International Atlantic Tuna Landings (mt ww) for the Purse Seine Fishery in the Atlantic and Mediterranean (2004-2011)

Species	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Bluefin tuna	19,895	23,524	20,356	22,980	12,641	9,479	4,985	4,293
Yellowfin tuna	62,228	61,410	62,761	52,733	70,047	77,757	74,172	69,802
Skipjack tuna	93,284	89,704	71,215	81,335	73,080	84,494	125,467	149,307
Bigeye tuna	18,417	18,595	16,457	17,553	15,536	22,658	23,769	27,544
Albacore	717	949	3,432	1,289	169	259	213	192
Total	**194,541**	**194,182**	**174,221**	**175,890**	**171,473**	**194,659**	**228,606**	**251,138**
U.S. total	32	178	4	28	0	11	0	0
U.S. percentage	0.02	0.09	<0.01	0.02	0	<0.01	0	0

Source: SCRS 2012

3.10.5.4 Commercial Handgears

Commercial handgears, including handline, harpoon, rod and reel, buoy gear and bandit gear, are used to fish for Atlantic HMS on private vessels, charter vessels, and headboat vessels. Rod and reel gear may be deployed from a vessel that is anchored, drifting, or under way (trolling). In general, trolling consists of dragging baits or lures through, on top of, or even above the water's surface. While trolling, vessels often use outriggers to assist in spreading out or elevating baits or lures and to prevent fishing lines from tangling. In the Project area, handgear fisheries for all HMS are typically most active during the summer and early fall. The availability of Atlantic tunas at a specific location and time is highly dependent on environmental variables that fluctuate from year to year.

Fishing usually takes place outside of the proposed Study Area, generally between 8 and 200 km from shore, and for those vessels using bait, the baitfish typically includes herring, mackerel, whiting, mullet, menhaden, ballyhoo, butterfish, and squid. The commercial handgear fishery for bluefin tuna has historically occurred mainly in New England, but more recently off the coast of southern Atlantic states, such as Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina. The majority of U.S. commercial handgear fishing activities for bigeye, albacore, yellowfin, and skipjack tunas take place in the northwest Atlantic.

The proportion of domestic HMS landings harvested with handgear varies by species, but Atlantic tunas comprise the majority of the commercial landings. In 2011, bluefin tuna commercial handgear landings accounted for approximately 66% of the total U.S. bluefin tuna landings, and 87% of commercial bluefin tuna landings. Historic (1950s-2010) catch levels using hand gear (designated as other), for predominant species, within portions of the Project area are presented in Figure 30, Figure 31 and Figure 32.

3.10.5.5 Pot and Trap Gear

Commercial fishing for deep-sea red crab uses pots or traps. These are rectangular, square, or cylindrical enclosed devices with one or more gates or entrances set on the bottom to target benthic invertebrates such as the deep-sea red crab. Pots/traps are usually marked at the surface with a buoy (float) that is attached to the pot or trap by a rope. This type of gear is usually set in string near natural or artificial structure or hard bottom. Pots are connected by “mainlines” that either float off the bottom or sink to the bottom (Stevenson et al. 2004).

Annual U.S. commercial landings of deep sea red crab during 1982 to 2005 ranged from 466 mt (1996) to 4,000 mt (2001); no fishing took place in 1994, as there was no targeted fishery for the species that year. Since 2002, when the fishery management plan was implemented, landings have been stable at about 2000 mt per year. A small portion of red crab landings are taken as bycatch in the offshore lobster fishery. There is no recreational fishery for red crabs. Discards consist of female crabs (which cannot be landed by regulation) and male crabs too small to sell. Discards have not been well quantified, but are likely substantial for both males and females in the red crab fishery. Since 2002, U.S. landings for deepsea red crabs have been almost exclusively (99%) at ports in Massachusetts. Landings for 2002 to 2012 totaled 7,132 mt, with a value of almost $15 million (NOAA 2013a).

The red crab fishing grounds lie almost entirely outside of the Study Area and therefore interaction with proposed activities are highly unlikely.

4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSEQUENCES

4.1 PROPOSED ACTION

The proposed action is to conduct a seismic survey program that involves using a 36-airgun array with a total discharge volume of 6,600 in^3. The survey program is planned to occur over two years, for three weeks or less in August – September, 2014, and for a similar amount of time but as yet unscheduled between April and August, 2015. There is considerable uncertainty in the 2015 cruise because funding is not yet secured and the location and schedule of the R/V Langseth for 2015 is not yet determined. The 2014 and 2015 surveys are planned with track lengths of 3,150 and 3,105 km respectively (Figure 3), and, because they are within 1.5 % of each other in length, are considered to have identical impacts on the environment for the purposes of this assessment except when considered cumulatively in the cumulative impacts section (§ 5). The proposed action is in water depths greater than 2,000 m, mostly in international waters outside the U.S. Atlantic continental margin, but partly within the deep-water portions of the U.S. EEZ. The Langseth airgun array introduces pulsed sounds into the ocean and could produce incidental takes of marine mammals and endangered species The bulk of the analysis in this section covers the anticipated impacts of this seismic source.

Although the NSF/USGS PEIS presents general environmental consequences for airgun sounds from actions similar to the one proposed in this EA, there are new scientific studies and publications since that document was finalized. These new studies update the background information and environmental consequences for mysticetes, odontocetes, fish, and habitats (for example, Cato, 2013; Castellote et al., 2012; Ellison et al., 2012; Finneran, 2013; Hawkins, 2013; Ketten, 2013; Kight and Swaddle, 2011; Lokkeborg et al., 2012; Nowacek, 2013; Nowacek et al., 2013; Richardson, 2013; Southall et al., 2013a; Southall et al., 2013b). There is also the potential for designation of sargassum in the Atlantic Ocean as a critical habitat for juvenile loggerhead turtles (FR 78 (138) 18 July 2013). Much of the recent literature and the importance of these studies to environmental consequences are presented in the NSF "Draft Environmental Assessment of a Marine Geophysical Survey by the R/V Marcus G. Langseth in the Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras, September–October 2014", referred to hereafter as the NSF Eastern North American Margins (ENAM) Draft EA (NSF, 2014), and are incorporated by reference into this EA.

The ENAM survey is in the same geographic region as the survey proposed in this EA (see NSF ENAM Draft EA, figure 6), uses similar size airgun source and receiver, and is scheduled to take place immediately following the USGS survey proposed here. Many of the effects described and updated in the NSF ENAM Draft EA are generic with respect to acoustic effects on the environment and are applicable to our EA. However, the specific location of the proposed USGS tracklines are further offshore and cover a larger region of deep water along the U.S. margin than the ENAM survey (see NSF ENAM Draft EA, figure 6). Hence, the environmental consequences of the proposed actions may differ between the two surveys (e.g., types and numbers of marine species potentially impacted).

The new studies do not fundamentally change the way the airgun modeling is done (Appendix A) or how the incidental takes are estimated (Appendix B). The acoustic modeling has been done to be consistent with modeling used for other EAs and has been deemed to be acceptable for estimating takes under MMPA and defining exclusion zones associated with the 160 dB re 1 μPa_{rms} and 180 dB re 1 μPA_{rms} isopleths used to estimate Level B and Level A takes respectively.

4.2 NOISE EMISSIONS

The majority of noise emitted during the proposed action would be due to the seismic airgun array. The Langseth airgun array is a tuned acoustic source that emits sound energy primarily below 200 Hz at frequencies useful for identifying the base of the sediments in the deep waters off the U.S. Atlantic continental margin, but which also overlaps with the hearing ranges of some marine species (further described below). The airgun array produces an impulsive sound one to three times per minute, and is not a continuous noise.

Additional noise emissions could come from operation of the Kongsberg EM 122 MBES and the Knudsen Chirp 3260 SBP, which would be operated simultaneously with the airgun array. These acoustic systems are described in the NSF/USGS PEIS (§ 2.2.3.1) and a summary of new scientific studies and their potential significance has been updated in the NSF ENAM Draft EA. These more recent studies do not change the basic conclusions of the NSF/USGS PEIS that operation of this equipment might produce localized, temporary, or minor behavior changes in some marine species, but is unlikely to be geographically extensive or long lasting.

The survey vessel itself contributes very little to the overall noise field. This noise is also described in the NSF/USGS PEIS (§ 2.2.3.1) with a summary of new scientific studies on vessel noise and their potential significance given in the NSF ENAM Draft EA. These more recent studies do not change the basic conclusions of the NSF/USGS PEIS that vessel noise would not be at levels that would cause anything more than localized and temporary behavioral changes in marine mammals. Further, large vessel traffic is so common in the oceans of the world that it is considered a usual source of background (i.e., ambient) noise.

4.2.1 Sound Effect Criteria

The potential for anthropogenic underwater noise to affect marine species depends on the species' ability to hear the sounds produced (Ireland et al. 2007). Noises are less likely to disturb animals if they are at frequencies outside the animal's range of hearing. An exception is when the sound pressure is so high that it can cause physical injury. For non-injurious sound levels, frequency weighting curves based on audiograms may be applied to weight the importance of sound levels at particular frequencies in a manner reflective of the receiver's sensitivity to those frequencies (Nedwell and Turnpenny 1998).

The NMFS/NOAA considers two levels of harassment to the marine mammals: Level A (auditory injury by way of the onset of permanent threshold shift, or PTS) and Level B (disturbance by way of temporary threshold shift, TTS, and/or behavior impacts). According to the 1994 Amendments to the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) of 1972, Level A Harassment is defined as "any act that injures or has the potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild." Level B Harassment is defined as "any act that disturbs or is likely to disturb a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, surfacing, nursing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering, to a point where such behavioral patterns are abandoned or altered."

NMFS (2000) specified that Level A Harassment for pulsed sources occurs when an animal is exposed to sound pressure levels of 180 dB re 1 μPa rms (for cetaceans) or 190 dB re 1 μPa rms (for pinnipeds). The criterion of 160 dB re 1 μPa rms is considered to induce Level B Harassment for both mammal groups for pulsed sources. More recently, the Noise Criteria Group was established, sponsored by NMFS, resulting in new recommendations for updated exposure criteria using the best available science (Southall et al. 2007). In December 2013, NOAA issued revised draft Acoustic Guidance for public comment. However, these recommendations have not been made final. These guidelines propose to update the acoustic threshold levels for which TTS and PTS is predicted to occur in marine mammal species, incorporating the dual metrics of cumulative sound exposure level (SEL_{cum}) and peak sound pressure level (SPL). Frequency weighting functions are also incorporated to account for differences between various hearing groups: low- mid and high-frequency cetaceans, otarid and phocid pinnipeds.

USGS would be prepared to revise its operational mitigation protocols outlined by new guidance from NMFS.

The current NOAA/NMFS acoustic threshold levels for Level A and Level B harassment and behavior sound effects for cetaceans are shown in Table 16.

Table 16: Injury and Behavior Exposure Criteria for Cetaceans

Group	Level A (Injury) Pressure (dB re 1 μPa rms)	Level B (Behavior) Pressure (dB re 1 μPa rms)
Cetaceans	180	160

The SBP and MBES systems would be operated only in conjunction with the seismic source (i.e. not during transits). An EZ or FMZ for those instruments would lie within the limits for those defined for the seismic source. Therefore, no further modeling or analysis of those systems was required.

4.2.2 Exclusion Zone

The proposed survey would use an array volume of 6,600 in^3. Project site-specific modeling has not been completed for that array; however, received sound levels recorded during calibration in the Gulf of Mexico have been predicted by L-DEO's model (included here as Appendix A) as a function of distance from the airguns, for the 36-airgun array at any tow depth. Although the study provides caveats on its applicability (water temperature, salinity, sound speed, and sediment not taken into account), the the Gulf of Mexico calibration measurements demonstrate that, although simple, the L-DEO model is a robust tool for estimating mitigation radii. The energy output (zero to peak) for the 6,600 in^3 array is 258.5 dB re 1 μPa @ 1m.

Table 17 summarizes the L-DEO model (Appendix A) predicted distance in water depth >1000 m relative to sound level criteria (≥190, 180 and 160 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS}) that are expected to be received during the proposed survey on the East Coast margin in 2014 and 2015.

Table 17: Predicted radii distances to the NMFS >190, 180 and 160 dB SPL (rms) Criteria for single 40 in^3 airgun and 6,600 in^3 Airgun Array at 9 m tow depth

Array	Predicted Safety Radii (m)		
	190 dB	180 dB	160 dB
Single Bolt 40 in3 airgun	100[1]	100	338
36 air gun array, total volume 6,600 cu. in.	286	927	5780

[1] Exclusion zone for the small airgun is 100 m per NSF/USGS PEIS

The sound exposure levels for mitigation radii were calculated using the transmission loss modeling results and corresponding source level for each modeled source expressed in SPL (rms) units of dB re: 1 .µPascal m.

Mitigation procedures would require a power-down of the airgun array should a marine mammal or sea turtle approach or appear within the airgun EZ. During these power-downs, a single 40 in^3 airgun would continue to be operated as a mitigation gun, unless the animal proceeded to approach the EZ for the mitigation airgun, in which case all airguns would be shut down until the EZ were cleared and the power-up (e.g., ramp up) procedure initiated. The mitigation airgun would also be used for minor, short-duration maintenance of the airgun array. For longer, major maintenance of the seismic equipment, the mitigation gun would not be used and the entire system would be shut down.

4.2.3 Direct Effects on Mysticetes, Odontocetes, and Pinnipeds

Because the studies that describe direct effects of noise, including airgun sounds, on marine mammals are given for species in the NSF/USGS PEIS and the NSF ENAM Draft EA, this section identifies some of the direct effects, proposed mitigation, and estimated takes associated with this proposed action. Appendix 2 (Request for Incidental Harassment Authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act) gives the detailed analyses that support estimates of the marine mammals that could be taken by the proposed action of this Draft EA, together with the number of requested takes.

4.2.3.1 Mysticetes

The seven species of mysticetes that occur in the proposed study area have been observed infrequently to rarely compared to their coastal presence (Figures 9 and 10), and when they have been observed, are generally along the western (continental slope and upper continental rise) regions of the survey. Although the distribution observations have large uncertainties, the low densities of animals suggest that much of the survey area occurs in a region where mysticetes are not widespread and encounters would be minimal.

Hearing (temporary and permanent effects) - The mysticete auditory system is sensitive to the predominantly low-frequency energy produced by the proposed airgun source of 6,600 in^3. Section 3.6.4.2 and Appendix B and E of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011) provides details of effects on mysticete cetaceans.

There has been no specific documentation that temporary hearing impairment (TTS) occurs for marine mammals exposed to sequences of airgun pulses during operational seismic surveys

(NSF/USGS PEIS 2011 Appendix E) and in the newer scientific studies discussed in the NSF ENAM Draft EA. Mysticetes tend to avoid operating airguns, and these deviations reduce or eliminate the risk of temporary hearing effects. However, the low distribution of mysticetes in the survey area means it is possible that small numbers of mysticetes would be exposed to the Langseth airgun pulses that theoretically could cause TTS. These exposures are discussed in Appendix B.

NMFS‘s policy regarding exposure of marine mammals to high-level sounds is designed to eliminate the risk of permanent hearing damage (PTS). This policy has been that cetaceans should not be exposed to impulsive sounds ≥180 dB re 1 μPa (rms) (NMFS 2000). This criterion has been used in defining the exclusion zone (shut-down radii) - which was modeled at 927 m for these water depths in the Study Area - for cetaceans. Monitoring and mitigation measures are designed to detect marine mammals occurring near the seismic source array to avoid exposing them to sound pulses that might cause permanent threshold shifts. Hence the proposed action is designed to make it highly unlikely that mysticetes would have permanent injury from the airgun operations. Hence, Level A effects would be highly unlikely with appropriate mitigation measures (described in § 6).

The potential sensitivity of mysticetes to the mid- to high-frequency Knudsen SBP and the higher frequency EM 122 MBES is believed to be more variable and generally less sensitive among species, as described in the NSF/USGS PEIS and the more recent scientific studies in the NSF ENAM Draft EA. Because of the lower exposure relative to the airgun array, and the intermittent, and downward directed nature of these sounds, individuals would not be expected to be exposed to more than one or two pings from the moving vessel should they be in the ensonified area.

Masking - Studies of how anthropogenic sound, particularly seismic sounds, masks cetacean sounds, are limited and results are variable (summarized in Table 3.6-5 and Appendix E of the NSF/USGS PEIS 2011 together with more recent studies in the NSF ENAM Draft EA). The airgun signal is intermittent (one to three pulses per minute) and the amplitude of the signal falls rapidly with distance and time, making the “noise” intervals relatively small time periods during the survey. Masking of marine mammal calls and other natural sounds by the pulsed sounds of the Langseth airgun would be limited, particularly with proposed mitigation of ramp up, shut down, PSVO observing, and PAM (see §6).

Marine mammal communications would not be significantly masked by MBES signals given their low duty cycle and the brief period when an individual mammal would potentially be within the MBES or SBP beam from a moving vessel. Both of these signal types are predominantly or entirely at frequencies >11 kHz, i.e., higher than the predominant frequencies in mysticete calls, reducing any potential for masking. Similarly, mysticete communications would not be masked appreciably by the SBP signals given their downward directionality and the brief period when an individual mammal could be within the SBP beam.

Behavior -Baleen whales generally tend to avoid operating airguns, but avoidance radii are quite variable among species, locations, whale activities, oceanographic conditions affecting sound propagation, etc. (Appendices B and E in the NSF/USGS PEIS 2011 and the more recent studies described in the NSF ENAM Draft EA). For the proposed Langseth airgun array, behavior changes are possible and takes are estimated appropriately (Appendix B).

Herding of mysticetes is a behavior that could occur in canyon regions if the ship were to proceed onshore from deep water. For 2014, the ship track departs from Newark, NJ, so the northern line on the margin will be going from onshore to offshore. Note that this is opposite to the numbering scheme shown in Figure 3, which implies the cruise starts in the south (line 1) and ends in the north. The southern line going from offshore to onshore is in a region of no canyons (the closest canyon is ~200 km further north). The order of ship tracks for the 2015 cruise is not decided, but consideration of herding behavior will be taken into account when and if the cruise occurs and ports are determined.

4.2.3.2 Odontocetes

The distribution of the 27 species of odontocetes that could occur is irregular and infrequent throughout the survey area, with concentrations more common along the continental slope and upper rise of the Atlantic margin (Figures 12-15). Hence odontocetes are expected to be more commonly found in the area than mysticetes, although still not abundantly.

Hearing (temporary and permanent effects) – The Langseth airgun array would likely be audible to odontocetes, although odontocetes in general have hearing and vocalization frequencies that are much higher than the predominant 200 Hz (or lower) frequencies of the Langseth airgun array. Odontocetes are considered less sensitive to the predominant low frequencies produced by low frequency airgun arrays similar to that of the Langseth, as described in the NSF/USGS PEIS and from more recent studies described in the NSF ENAM Draft EA.

Some odontocetes show avoidance of the area where received levels of airgun sounds are high enough such that TTS could potentially occur. In those cases, the avoidance responses of the animals themselves reduce or (most likely) eliminate any possibility of TTS. If some odontocetes did experience temporary hearing impairment, the TTS effects would (by definition) be fully recoverable.

NMFS's policy regarding exposure of marine mammals to high-level sounds has been that cetaceans should not be exposed to impulsive sounds ≥180 dB re 1 μPa (rms) (NMFS 2000). This policy is designed to avoid permanent hearing effects (PTS) for cetaceans, including odontocetes. This criterion has been used in defining the exclusion zone (shut-down radii) - which was modeled at 927 m for these water depths in the Study Area - for all cetaceans. Monitoring and mitigation measures are designed to detect marine mammals occurring near airguns to avoid exposing them to sound pulses that might cause PTS. Hence the proposed action is designed to avoid a situation in which the odontocetes would have permanent hearing injury.

Sound frequencies produced by the EM 122 MBES and Knudsen SBP overlap the range of most sensitive hearing of many odontocetes, and all odontocetes can presumably hear these sounds based on what is known about their hearing, sound production, and ear structure. However, because of the low duty cycle and downward directed orientation of these sound sources, the anticipated effects should be limited to one to two pings from the moving vessel, i.e., of limited temporal and geographic range.

Masking – As described in the NSF/USGS PEIS and the updated information in the NSF ENAM Draft EA, Odontocetes are considered less sensitive to masking by low-frequency sounds than are mysticetes. Potential effects are considered minimal because the dominant low-frequency components of the airgun sounds do not overlap dominant frequencies produced by odontocetes and because vessels movement would be transient.

Odontocete communications would not be masked appreciably by the EM 122 MBES or Knudsen SBP signals given their low duty cycles, the brief period (i.e., seconds) when an individual mammal would potentially be within the downward-directed MBES or SBP beam from a transiting vessel. Temporary localized masking of odontocete calls by project vessel sound is possible although it would be short lived and of geographically limited extent.

Behavior – Odontocetes, and particularly delphinids show some limited avoidance of seismic vessels operating large airgun arrays (Appendix E in NSF/USGS PEIS 2011 and the more recent scientific studies summarized in NSF ENAM Draft EA). Results for porpoises appear to vary by species. In most cases, the animals do not show strong avoidance (i.e., they do not leave the area) and they continue to call. Controlled exposure experiments in the Gulf of Mexico indicate that foraging effort is apparently somewhat reduced upon exposure to airgun pulses from a seismic vessel operating in the area, and there may be a delay in diving to foraging depth. Odontocete reactions to large arrays of airguns are variable and, at least for delphinids and some porpoises, seem to be confined to a shorter distance than has been observed for mysticetes.

Behavioral responses of marine mammals, including odontocetes, to MBES sounds is treated in the NSF/USGS PEIS and updated in the NSF ENAM Draft EA. No information exists on the disturbance of odontocetes from operation of the MBES (Southall et al., 2013). The short ping duration of the MBES, its narrow fore-and-aft beam width, its generally downward directed beam orientation, and the forward movement of the vessel would reduce the sound energy received by any individual animals that might be within the ensonified zone. The newer information does not alter the findings of the NSF/USGS PEIS (§3.4.7., §3.6.7, and §3.7.7) that operation of MBES and SBP is not likely to impact either mysticetes or odontocetes. Exposure of individual odontocetes is likely brief in duration (<1 sec; 1 or at most 2 pings) given that these devices are located on a moving seismic vessel and the pings are intermittent and directed downward.

Herding of odontocetes is a behavior that could occur in canyon regions if the ship were to proceed onshore from deep water. For 2014, the ship track departs from Newark, NJ, so the northern line on the margin will be going from onshore to offshore. Note that this is opposite to the numbering scheme shown in Figure 3, which implies the cruise starts in the south (line 1) and ends in the north. The southern line going from offshore to onshore is in a region of no canyons (the closest canyon is ~200 km further north). The order of ship tracks for the 2015 cruise is not decided, but consideration of herding behavior will be taken into account when and if the cruise occurs and ports are determined.

4.2.3.3 Pinnipeds

Pinnipeds have not been observed in the survey area (see §3.5). Because they are coastal inhabitants, they are not expected to be effected by the operation of the Langseth airgun array in the deep-water continental margin areas of the study area. In the unlikely event pinnipeds are observed during the survey, appropriate mitigation would be undertaken as per NMFS guidance for pinnipeds.

4.2.3.4 Summary of Direct Effects on Mysticetes, Odontocetes, and Pinnipeds

The proposed seismic project (involving the use of a 6,600 in^3 airgun array, a Kongsberg EM 122 MBES and a Knudsen 3260 SBP) introduces pulsed sounds into the ocean that, with the proposed mitigation measures, could result in a small number of animals coming within the areas identified where temporary hearing changes, masking of vocalizations/communications, and minor behavioral changes could occur. Hence a small number of Level B harassment effects could occur. Level A effects, using the proposed mitigation procedures, would be highly unlikely.

Table 18, reproduced from Appendix B, presents the estimated takes and requests for takes for mysticetes and odontocetes species that could be encountered during the proposed summer (June, July, August) 2014 and 2015 seismic programs. Table 19 presents the estimated takes and requests for takes for mysticetes and odontocetes species that could be encountered during a 2015 program that was scheduled in the spring (March, April, May). Only two species show increased estimated takes in the spring as opposed to the summer (the potential take of humpback whales increases by 38 and the possible take of Bottlenose dolphin increases by 11). Ten species show decreased estimate of takes in the spring, and all other species show no change in estimated takes.

Table 18: Densities and Estimates of Possible Numbers of Individuals That Could be Exposed to 160 dB re 1 μPA_{RMS} During Each of Proposed Summer (June, July, August) 2014 and 2015 2-D Seismic Surveys

Species	Mean Density (#/km^2)[a]	Ensonified Area (km^2)	Calculated Take[b]	% of Regional Population[c]	Requested Level B Take Authorization
Mysticetes					
Fin Whale	0.0000610	36,600	3	0.0113	3
Humpback Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0259	3[d]
Minke Whale	0.0000360	36,600	2	0.0014	2
North Atlantic Right Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.6593	3[d]
Blue Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.2339	2[d]
Bryde's Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	3[d]
Sei Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0291	3[d]
Odontocetes					
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	0.1106	54[d]
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin	0.0288400	36,600	1056	2.3616	1056
Bottlenose Dolphin	0.0066470	36,600	244	0.3147	244
Long-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0190400	36,600	697	0.0894	697
Short-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0190400	36,600	697	0.0894	697
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin	0.0197600	36,600	724	21.7222	724
Risso's Dolphin	0.0093180	36,600	342	1.8740	342
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin	0.0055320	36,600	203	0.1170	203
Striped Dolphin	0.1343000	36,600	4,916	8.9697	4,916
Sperm Whale	0.0022510	36,600	83	0.6293	83
Killer whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	7[d]
Clymene Dolphin	0.0093110	36,600	0	N/A	346
Spinner Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	65[d]
Rough-Toothed Dolphin	0.0004260	36,600	16	5.5351	16
Fraser's Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Harbor Porpoise	N/A	36,600	0	0.0010	5[d]
False Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	15[d]
Pygmy Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	25[d]
Dwarf Sperm Whale	0.0008970	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Pygmy Sperm Whale	0.0008970	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Melon-Headed Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Sowerby's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600	84	1.1844	84
Blainville's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600			
Gervais' Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600			
True's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600			
Cuvier's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600		1.2860	
Northern Bottlenose Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	2[d]
Pinnipeds					
Harbor seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Gray seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Harp seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Hooded Seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0

[a] Source: OBIS-SERDP-Navy NODE 2007a and 2007b (for those species where density data were available).
[b] Calculated take is estimated density multiplied by the 160-db ensonified area. These calculations do not include any contingency as the survey will be conducted as one continuous line.
[c] Requested takes expressed as percentages of the larger regional populations, where available; where not available (most odontocetes–see Table 2), Draft 2013 SAR population estimates were used; N/A means not available
[d] Requested take authorization was increased to average group size for species for which densities were not available but have been sighted near or have the potential to be observed within the Study Area. Average group size from CeTAP 1984.

Table 19: Densities and Estimates of Possible Numbers of Individuals That Could be Exposed to 160 dB re 1 µPA$_{RMS}$ During Spring (March, April, May) 2015 2-D Seismic Survey

Species	Mean Density (#/km^2)[a]	Ensonified Area (km^2)	Calculated Take[b]	% of Regional Population[c]	Requested Level B Take Authorization
Mysticetes					
Fin Whale	0.0000600	36,600	3	0.113	3
Humpback Whale	0.0010170	36,600	38	0.3276	38
Minke Whale	0.0000350	36,600	2	0.0014	2
North Atlantic Right Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.6593	3[d]
Blue Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.2339	2[d]
Bryde's Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	3[d]
Sei Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0291	3[d]
Odontocetes					
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	0.1106	54[d]
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin	0.0285700	36,600	1046	2.3393	1046
Bottlenose Dolphin	0.0069560	36,600	255	0.3289	255
Long-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0108000	36,600	396	0.0408	396
Short-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0108000	36,600	396	0.0508	396
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin	0.0194900	36,600	714	21.422	714
Risso's Dolphin	0.0092150	36,600	338	1.8520	338
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin	0.0053940	36,600	198	0.1141	198
Striped Dolphin	0.1330000	36,600	4,868	8.8817	4,868
Sperm Whale	0.0019050	36,600	70	0.5307	70
Killer whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	7[d]
Clymene Dolphin	0.0093110	36,600	341	N/A	341
Spinner Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	65[d]
Rough-Toothed Dolphin	0.0004200	36,600	16	5.9041	16
Fraser's Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Harbor Porpoise	N/A	36,600	0	0.00010	5[d]
False Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	15[d]
Pygmy Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	25[d]
Dwarf Sperm Whale	0.0008850	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Pygmy Sperm Whale	0.0008850	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Melon-Headed Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Sowerby's Beaked Whale		36,600			
Blainville's Beaked Whale		36,600		1.1139	
Gervais' Beaked Whale	0.0021370	36,600	79		79
True's Beaked Whale		36,600			
Cuvier's Beaked Whale		36,600		1.2094	
Northern Bottlenose Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	2[d]
Pinnipeds					
Harbor seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Gray seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Harp seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Hooded Seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0

[a] Source: OBIS-SERDP-Navy NODE 2007a and 2007b (for those species where density data were available).

[b] Calculated take is estimated density multiplied by the 160-db ensonified area. These calculations do not include any contingency as the survey will be conducted as one continuous line.

[c] Requested takes expressed as percentages of the larger regional populations, where available; where not available (most odontocetes–see Table 2), Draft 2013 SAR population estimates were used; N/A means not available

[d] Requested take authorization was increased to average group size for species for which densities were not available but have been sighted near or have the potential to be observed within the Study Area. Average group size from CeTAP 1984.

4.2.4 Direct Effects on Marine Birds

Of the seabirds, waterfowl, and shorebirds identified that could be in the study area (§3.6), only a subset of seabirds have been sighted regularly in the survey area. It is not possible to use quantitative sound-energy criteria to assess impacts of these sources on seabirds because there are no measured or predicted underwater audiograms for any seabird species, published or otherwise, or quantitative noise criteria used to characterize effects of airgun noise on seabirds, such as auditory thresholds corresponding to TTS or PTS levels caused by underwater noise. There are no documented adverse effects directly or indirectly on seabirds as reported by offshore observers or research. The NSF/USGS PEIS (Section 3.5.4) and the more recent NSF ENAM Draft EA addressed the effects of seismic surveys on seabirds and indicated that there are no scientific data indicating or suggesting that seabirds are adversely affected by seismic airguns or other sound sources used during the proposed seismic surveys.

During the proposed seismic surveys, dedicated PSVO's would monitor and record marine birds observed in the study area. Seismic activities would shut down for any ESA seabirds observed diving and/or foraging within the Exclusion Zone.

4.2.5 Direct Effects on Marine Fish, Marine Shellfish, and Essential Fish Habitat

Approximately 600 species of demersal and pelagic fish could occur in the survey area (§3.7). The NSF/USGS PEIS and the updated studies summarized in the NSF ENAM Draft EA concluded that the effects of marine sound on marine fish and their fisheries could result in non-lethal, temporary impacts, including short-term changes in behavior, and that there could be injury or mortal impact to a small number of individuals within several (10) meters of the Langseth airgun array (Appendix D, Section D.2.2). It further concluded that there would be no long-term effects on populations of fish.

The hearing capability of fish is not known well and varies with species (NSF/USGS PEIS, Appendix D, Section D.2.2, and the updated information in NSF ENAM Draft EA. McCauley et al. (2000) conducted trials with captive fish and found that increases in swimming behavior occurred when seismic sound levels reached 156 dB re 1 μPa rms. In activity proposed by USGS, noise levels should attenuate to 160 dB about 5800 m from the survey vessel. The hearing capability of Atlantic salmon indicates a rather low sensitivity to sound (Hawkins and Johnstone 1978). Laboratory experiments yielded responses only to 0.58 kHz and only at high sound levels. Poor hearing by salmon is likely due to the lack of a link between the swim bladder and inner ear (Jorgensen et al. 2004). Sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*) were found to be responsive to sounds with frequencies from 100 to 500 Hz, generally at the higher end of the frequencies produced by the Langseth airgun array. Based on the known or presumed hearing ranges of ESA-listed salmonids and sturgeon, airgun arrays could contribute to localized, transitory masking of sound detection by these species. However, in general, the potential for masking effects would be limited and localized in extent given the brief, pulsed nature of the seismic survey sounds and the transiting seismic vessel relative to individual fish; related effects would not be measureable at the population scale.

The use of the Langseth MBES is extremely unlikely to result in population-level effects on any marine fish species as it operates at 10.5-13 kHz, frequencies that are above the known hearing ranges of most marine fish species (Table 3.3-3 in the NSF/USGS PEIS) and above the known hearing ranges of ESA-listed salmonids and sturgeon. Alosidae fishes can detect ultrasonic (>20 kHz) signals (Mann et al. 2001), but exposures of individual fish (those not very close to the MBES) would be very brief (less than one minute). The frequencies of the SBP are within the hearing range of some species in the order Clupeiformes. The exposures of most individual fish (those not very close to the SBP) would be brief. No other marine fish are currently known to hear as high as 2.5 kHz (Table 3.3-3). The narrower along-track beam of the Langseth MBES and SBP would affect a much smaller area than the broader areas affected by the airguns and arrays; as a result, a given fish location near the transiting source would be ensonified for only one to several brief pings at most, lasting less than a minute in duration.

Direct effects on essential fish habitats (see §3.8.2), either the substrate or the water column, would not be expected, because the seismic signals do not physically change the substrate or the water column. Indirect effects from the vessel and proposed survey are treated in §4.2.8.

Sargassum mats, which are floating algae that serve as nurseries for sea turtles and habitat for some marine fish and birds, occurs primarily to the south and east of the survey area in the Sargasso Sea, but could be found in the Survey area. The main impact associated with the proposed seismic survey would be the direct effects on the animals (marine mammals and sea turtles, as discussed above), rather than on the habitat.

In summary, the direct effects of the seismic survey and its noise may have minor effects on marine fisheries that are generally reversible, of limited duration, magnitude, and geographic extent when considering individual fish, and not measureable at the population level. There would be no anticipated negative impacts on Essential Fish Habitat (EFH). No mitigation would be needed for marine fish or EFH.

4.2.6 Direct Effects on Sea Turtles

Five species of sea turtle — the leatherback, loggerhead, green, hawksbill, and Kemp's Ridley — could be encountered in the proposed Study Area. Only foraging or migrating individuals would occur. Their occurrence in the study area is relatively small compared to their distribution and many observations on the shelf or near the upwelling of the shelf-slope break (see figures 18-22).

Based on what is known regarding sea turtle hearing (Section 3.4.4.2 NSF/USGS PEIS 2011) and more recent studies summarized in the NSF ENAM Draft EA, sound from the Langseth airguns would be detectable but the MBES and SBP signals would not be detectable by sea turtles. Sounds from an airgun array such as the Langseth array might cause temporary hearing impairment in sea turtles if they do not avoid the (uncertain) radius where TTS occurs. Research (Section 3.4.4.3 NSF/USGS PEIS 2011) generally suggests that sea turtles showed localized avoidance during large and small-source surveys when the airgun arrays were operating. Sea turtles generally respond to seismic survey sound with behavioral changes such as startling, increasing swimming speed, swimming away from, and/or locally avoiding the source. Studies indicate that exposure to seismic sounds results in short-term behavioral changes and localized avoidance by sea turtles. Available evidence suggests that the zone of avoidance around seismic sources is a few kilometers or less (McCauley et al. 2000a, b; Holst et al. 2006; Weir 2007).

Potential interactions between marine turtles and the project could be adverse in the study area. However, tendency of turtles to avoid seismic operations suggest it is unlikely that sea turtles would be exposed to sound levels of sufficient strength and for sufficient duration to cause physiological effects. Section 3.4.7 of the NSF/USGS PEIS concluded that with implementation of the proposed monitoring and mitigation measures, any effects are likely to be limited to short-term behavioral disturbance and short term localized avoidance of an area of unknown size near the active airguns. Ramp up procedures would also serve to further minimize direct effects on marine turtles.

4.2.7 Direct Effects on Fisheries

The survey area is within national and international commercial fisheries (§3.10.5). Potential impacts on commercial fisheries are more likely to be behavioral effects from the Langseth airgun array that could cause a small reduction in fish catch or temporary changes in distribution, migration, and reproduction due to behavioral effects on fish from seismic survey operations. For some fish species, behavioral changes from seismic survey operations may result in changes in vertical or horizontal distribution. These short-term behavioral effects would be localized.

Preclusion of fishermen from productive fishing grounds constitutes a space-use conflict. The size of the Study Area precluded to fishing would be limited to the area immediately surrounding the seismic vessel and gear. Seismic vessels such as *R/V Langseth* operate under a ‘restricted ability to maneuver’ designation, which means other vessels in the path of the survey vessel must give way.

The degree of impact would depend upon the relative mobility of the fishing operation (MMS 2004). Fixed gear (e.g., traps) is most vulnerable, and mobile gear such as hook-and-line fishing from drifting (or trolling) boats is least vulnerable. Because of the large water depths, non-fixed gear would be the more prevalent equipment used within the proposed survey area. Many gear types require considerable time to deploy and retrieve, decreasing the mobility of larger and deeper ocean fishing vessels. Surface currents and wind greatly influence the movement of longlines and other drifting gear (e.g., purse seines) but these natural impacts could also affect the Langseth receiver array. A longline deployed upstream of a geophysical survey grid could drift into the path of the survey vessel and become entangled in either the airgun array or the streamer receiver. Surface longlines are generally allowed to drift for 4 to 5 hours before a 10- to 12-hour retrieval period (MMS 2004). Minimizing potential adverse effects on fisheries may be accomplished by adjusting tracklines and communicating with fisherman about respective locations of vessels, equipment, and rater of travel or drift.

Although it is expected that recreational fishing would be extremely limited in the Study Area, impacts on recreational fishing would typically be similar to those described for commercial fishing. However, since most recreational fishing uses mobile gear such as hook-and-line fishing from drifting (or trolling) boats, the potential for impacts would generally be less than those described for commercial fishing operations.

In summary, potential adverse environmental effects on commercial and recreational fisheries would be mitigated through the implementation of various standard mitigation measures, including: communications with fishing vessels in the survey area during seismic operations, monitoring of fishing gear locations, and possible slight trackline adjustments that maintain safety and avoid entanglement.

4.2.8 Indirect Effects on Marine Mammals and Sea Turtles

The primary impact that could be expected for habitats or the food sources used by marine mammals and sea turtles would be temporarily elevated noise levels from the Langseth airgun array, MBES, and SBP. These impacts are expected to be short-term and of limited geographic extent. At any one time, only a very small area of available habitat or food supply would be ensonified at any one time. The proposed survey would have negligible impact on the ability of marine mammals and sea turtles to feed.

A special case exists for sargassum habitat (which has been proposed as a critical habitat for juvenile loggerhead sea turtles (FR 78(138) 18 July 2013). The proposed survey area is at the northern extent of the Sargasso Sea, and no observations exist for determining the likelihood of Sargassum in the study area. Because Sargassum occurs in patchy clumps, it is possible that the ship transiting across a clump would break it apart, but multiple clumps are how Sargassum occurs. Hence the ship's transit would create an effect that is identical to currents, which also separate and combine these clumps. The way the tracks are laid out in single long lines means that any Sargassum in the ship track would not be affected by more than the single traverse.

4.3 NON-ACOUSTIC DIRECT EFFECTS

Although the noise from the airguns is expected to be the primary direct effect on the environment, operating a large ship at sea could result in other effects. This section summarizes those effects.

4.3.1 Disturbance by Vessel Presence

Ocean going vessels such as *R/V Langseth* are common on nearly all of the world's oceans. Noise or lights from a large vessel such as *Langseth* could affect marine animals in the proposed study area. At survey speed (approximately 4.2 knots), the vessel would cover about 200 km per day, and would not be in one area long enough for the effects to be lasting. The NSF/USGS PEIS concluded that the normal vessel sounds and lights could not be expected to cause more than localized, short-term, or temporary changes in behavior of marine animals, similar to the effects that any large commercial vessel might have.

4.3.2 Collisions

The risk of collision of seismic vessels or towed/deployed equipment with marine mammals exists but is extremely unlikely. This is based on the relatively slow operating speed (typically 4-5 kt or 7-9 km/h) of the vessel during seismic operations, and the generally straight-line movement of the seismic vessel. Collisions between cetaceans and seismic gear have not been reported during previous seismic vessel activities. Although a seismic vessel would travel faster during transits to and from seismic survey sites (approximately 10 kt or 18 km/h), movement would be predominantly in a straight line, with typically gradual changes in orientation. As noted in the NSF/USGS PEIS (§3.4.4.4 and (§3.6.4.4), collisions between vessels and/or their towed gear with marine mammals or sea turtles is extremely unlikely.

The planned monitoring and mitigation procedures are designed to minimize, if not eliminate, risk of collision.

4.3.3 Entanglement with Towed/Deployed Gear

The NSF/USGS PEIS (§3.4.4.4 and (§3.6.4.4) concluded that the risk of entanglement of towed/deployed equipment with marine mammals and sea turtles could occur but would be extremely unlikely. Entanglement of marine mammals in seismic equipment is not likely since streamers are equipped with no tangle gear and marine mammals and sea turtles are expected to avoid the vessel during operations. Rare incidents have been reported of a turtle becoming entangled in tail-buoys off Africa (Weir, 2007), and a single incident occurred when an olive ridely turtle was found in a deflector foil of the seismic equipment during *Langseth* operations off Costa Rica in 2011 (in a region of abundant turtles). Deflector foils are deployed for 3D seismic surveys, and will not be deployed for this 2D survey. No other incidents of entanglement have occurred in more than a decade of seismic surveys of *Langseth* operations or those of its predecessor NSF vessel *R/V Maurice Ewing*.

The planned monitoring and mitigation procedures are designed to minimize, if not eliminate, risk of and entanglement.

4.3.4 Waste Discharges

R/V Langseth could produce a variety of discharges and emissions, as described in Table 20 below, together with the regulations and actions that would minimize or eliminate their effects.

Table 20: Summary of Seismic Vessel Related Emissions and Discharges

Discharge/ Emission	Description and Handling/Disposal Procedures
Grey and Black Water	There may be up to 55 persons on the seismic vessel at any one time. Grey water discharge (showers, dishwashing, deck drains, etc.) could be 40 m^3/d and that black water discharge (sanitary waste) would be 19 m^3/d. All liquid discharges would be treated in accordance with the IMO standards prior to ocean discharge.
Ballast Water	On survey vessel, ballast water is stored in dedicated ballast tanks to improve vessel stability. No oil would be present in ballast/preload tanks or in the discharged ballast/preload water. If oil is suspected to be in water, it would be tested and, if necessary, treated to ensure that oil concentrations in the discharge do not exceed 15 mg/L, as required by MARPOL 73/78 (International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, and the Protocol of 1978 related thereto), IMO.

Bilge Water	Bilge water often contains oil and grease that originate in the engine room and machinery spaces. Before discharge, bilge water is treated in accordance with MARPOL 73/78, IMO using an oil/water separator. The extracted water is tested to ensure that the discharges contain no more than 15 mg/L of oil.
Discharges from Machinery Spaces	Machinery spaces would be equipped with drip trays, curbs and gutters, and other devices to prevent spilled or leaked materials from entering the water. Waste material from drip pans and work spaces would be collected in a closed system designed for that purpose and would be returned to the process cycle, recycled, or transferred ashore.
Solid Waste	Most solid waste is transferred to shore for disposal at an approved disposal facility. Compliance with vessel waste management plan, Clean Water Act, and MARPOL 73/78 for all solid waste discharges. Combustible materials (e.g., oily rags, paint cans) are handled separately in hazardous materials containers. Recycling programs would comply with local state regulatory requirements.
Chemicals and Hazardous Materials	Chemicals and hazardous materials that would be stored on the survey vessel and consumed during the project include industrial cleaners, paints, lubricants, *etc*. All hazardous materials would be managed according to applicable guidelines and regulations to prevent environmental and human health impacts. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) and worker training records would be made available according to applicable regulations. All hazardous waste would be brought to shore for treatment and/or disposal. The seismic vessel is equipped with solid-streamer technology, as this type of streamer is not reliant on flotation fluid to achieve a neutral ballast state, thus eliminating the risk of an accidental spill.
Lights	The survey vessel would carry operational, navigation and warning lights. Working areas would be illuminated with floodlights as required for compliance with occupational health and safety standards and would be fully equipped with emergency lighting.

Atmospheric Emissions	The major emission source from the proposed surveys is the seismic vessel. Operational atmospheric emissions may include vessel exhaust, exhaust fumes from diesel generators and operational emission of halons during firefighting or maintenance of air conditioning and refrigeration systems. These emissions would be minimized through best vessel management practices and preventative maintenance procedures. Survey emissions would not exceed any applicable air quality standards or guidelines. There are limited emission sources and few receptors likely to be affected. To ensure that air emissions are minimized, L-DEO would implement the following mitigation measures: • properly maintaining and routinely inspecting ship equipment • minimizing vapor loss from fuel tanks • minimizing idling of equipment when not in use • complying with the air quality regulations (Clean Air Act) • adhere to MARPOL Annex VI, Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships

With proper attention to regulations governing these emissions, development of appropriate action plans, and safe operation of the vessel, which is normal operating procedure the risk from these waste emissions should be minimized or eliminated.

4.3.5 Potential Malfunctions and Accidental Events

There are unplanned situations that may be encountered during the proposed action. Potential hazards such as fuel spills, loss of seismic gear, or vessel collissions are addressed during site-specific planning as part of emergency response planning. Procedures are developed by L-DEO to ensure that such events are managed in a safe and environmentally sound manner. L-DEO has policies, plans, and procedures to prevent or mitigate effects of malfunctions and accidents. These policies, plans, and procedures would be located on the seismic vessel, and in the L-DEO shore office. During the proposed action, there would be limited amounts of marine fuel and lube oil onboard that could potentially be accidentally spilled to the ocean. The *Langseth* operates on diesel fuel. The fuel (marine gas oil) capacity of the *Langseth* is 1,340 m^3 (353,760 gal). Any accidental spill would be reported to the US Coast Guard immediately.

The *Langseth* would be equipped with solid-streamer technology, as this type of streamer does not rely on flotation fluid to achieve a neutral ballast state, thus eliminating the risk of an accidental spill from a damaged streamer.

Other accidental events could include damage or loss of seismic equipment, entanglement of seismic equipment with fishing gear, and vessel collisions. Best management practices and communications would be used on the survey vessel to avoid equipment loss or damage. Gear would be retrieved from the water if wave heights reach or exceed unacceptable limits. In case of severe weather, the vessel may return to shore until conditions improve.

4.3.6 Additional Safety concerns for *R/V Langseth*

In the Northwest Atlantic, marine operations are affected primarily by wind, waves, currents, visibility, and to a lesser extent, air and sea temperatures. The time of year is a factor in determining the level of risk or impact any of these environmental parameters may have on operational efficiency or success. Planning and executing activities safely requires due consideration of the seasonally variable hazards which may be encountered.

Project activities are planned to take place between in August and September, 2014 and between April and August, 2015. This section characterizes the range of conditions likely to be encountered within this time frame, and some of the potential associated adverse effects. Vessels, equipment and materials used by the project must be rated to function within the expected conditions and adhere to all standards and codes for safety and data quality.

Wind and waves have the potential to increase stress on vessels, disrupt operations and scheduling, and to affect survey data quality. Vessels such as *R/V Langseth* and its equipment must be able to withstand the range of normal and extreme wind and wave conditions expected. Seismic survey operations are typically limited by wind or sea conditions due to loss of data quality in high seas and potential damage to equipment.

Thunderstorms and major storm systems occur in the region most often during summer and fall as hot, humid air masses collide with passing fronts (Joyce, 1987). Tropical cyclones, which occur during summer and fall, are severe but infrequent. Extratropical cyclones occur frequently during winter and may produce unfavorable conditions during winter and spring. Most major storms, including hurricanes, occur during the North Atlantic hurricane season from June through November. The *Langseth* is built as a global ocean vessel able to withstand the stresses that could occur in high winds and heavy seas.

While the summer to early fall period generally favors calm seas, visibility may be reduced due to formation of fog and could affect operations because of limited visibility. Limited visibility is accounted for in the mitigation procedures.

Warm and cold core rings are features of the Gulf Stream and described in detail in Appendix F of the NSF/USGS PEIS (2011). Upwellings occur in the western part of the study area from wind driven water current from slopes along the shelf break. Both oceanography features can create strong currents that increase the potential for entanglement on the streamers trailing behind the *Langseth*. These circumstances occur in all oceanographic environments that seismic surveys must accommodate and present no greater risk to this Langseth cruise than other seismic cruises utilizing long streamers.

4.4 ANALYSIS OF ALTERNATIVES – ALTERNATIVE ACTION: ANOTHER TIME

An alternative to issuing the IHA for the period requested, and to conducting the project then, is to issue the IHA for another time, and to conduct the project at that alternative time. The proposed dates for the first cruise (21 days in August 16 to September 6, 2014, the dates for the 2015 survey are yet to be scheduled) are the dates when the personnel and equipment essential to meet the overall project objectives are available.

Marine mammals and sea turtles are expected to be found throughout the proposed Study Area and throughout the time period during which the project may occur. Most marine mammal species are year-round residents in the North Atlantic, based on the number of OBIS sightings in the Study Area and adjacent waters, so altering the timing of the proposed project likely would result in no net benefits for those species.

4.5 ANALYSIS OF ALTERNATIVES – NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

An alternative to conducting the proposed activities is the "No Action" alternative, i.e. do not issue an IHA and do not conduct the operations. If the research were not conducted, the "No Action" alternative would result in no disturbance to marine mammals or sea turtles attributable to the proposed activities. The U.S would not be able to define the ECS and therefore not be able to exercise its sovereign rights over the seafloor and sub-seafloor because it would lack the data to determine the extent of its sovereign rights. Nor would the USGS have an important data set to contribute to its accurate assessment of submarine landslide and tsunami hazards along the east coast. The No-Action Alternative would not meet the purpose and need for the proposed activities.

5 CUMULATIVE EFFECTS

The CEQ regulations (40 CFR sec.1500 - 1508) for implementing NEPA define cumulative effects as the impact on the environment that results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions (40 CFR 1508.7). The NSF/USGS PEIS addresses scientific research activities within the 2012-2020 time-frame, and a cumulative activity scenario has been developed for the same period as recommended by the CEQ (1997) guidelines. The reasonably foreseeable future activities described below are part of the cumulative scenario. Individual environmental effects could accumulate and interact to result in cumulative environmental effects. A critical step in the environmental assessment is determining what other projects or activities have reached a level of certainty (e.g., “would be carried out”) such that they must be considered in an environmental assessment. Certain requirements must be met to consider cumulative environmental effects:

- there must be a measurable environmental effect of the project being proposed;
- the environmental effect must be demonstrated to interact cumulatively with the environmental effects from other projects or activities; and
- it must be known that the other projects or activities have been, or would be, carried out and are not hypothetical.

5.1 CUMULATIVE EFFECTS OF PROPOSED TWO-CRUISE (2014, 2015) SEISMIC PROGRAM

The proposed action occurs in two parts, although only the first (2014) part is currently scheduled and funded. The two parts would occur at least 7 months apart and may be closer to one year apart. The nature of each survey is that the vessel would be continuously moving, covering different parts of the seafloor, except for occasionally crossing tracklines, which is a required component of the seismic cruise plan. The seismic tracks are laid out to satisfy the requirements of Article 76 of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea for substantiating the sediment thickness formula line. Because the sounds generated by seismic surveys are transient and do not "accumulate" in the environment, the most likely cumulative effects would be associated with other concurrent activities (e.g., cargo ships, tankers, other seismic surveys, or fishing vessels). The cumulative effects of the proposed two-part seismic program would be short term, intermittent and localized, with respect to effects on marine mammal species and sea turtles.

The individual seismic survey vessel activity and noise would constitute a temporary and minor contribution to the overall noise generated by other such sources and and would be of short duration in local areas. Based on current knowledge, and especially with the proposed mitigation procedures in place, the proposed project is not expected to result in, or contribute to, cumulative impacts on marine mammals or sea turtles, including threatened or endangered species.

5.2 METHODOLOGY FOR THE CUMULATIVE EFFECTS ANALYSIS

- The scoping exercise was undertaken to identify past, ongoing, and reasonably-foreseeable human activities that are likely to interact cumulatively with environmental effects from exploration activities. The next step was to assess the potential impact of cumulative effects on each environmental factor.
- The other projects and activities considered in this assessment include those that are likely to proceed (such as those listed in the Federal Register), and those which have been issued permits, licenses, leases or other forms of approval. Past, present and future activities that may impact cumulatively with the project are outlined in Table 21.

Table 21: Scoping of Offshore Activities and Interactions with the Survey Project

Activity	Description	Temporal Interaction with Project	Spatial Interaction
Offshore Petroleum	Exploration Drilling, Development Drilling or Production	Future	No Interaction. Anticipated leasing within the Mid-Atlantic and Southern Atlantic OCS planning areas is not anticipated until well after the 2016 time frame (USDOI, BOEM, 2011c). Nine applications for Geological and Geophysical (G&G) activities by geophysical companies are registered on the BOEM website; all applications have expired on exploration survey schedule. It is not anticipated that any of these permits would be issued before 2015.
ECS Bathymetric and Geophysical Research	The U.S. Interagency Task Force on the Extended Continental Shelf (ECS) has a multiyear strategy for acquiring data along the U.S. margins in order to define the outer limits of the U.S. ECS beyond 200 nm.	Present, Future	No spatial overlap with additional ECS surveys is forecast

Activity	Description	Temporal Interaction with Project	Spatial Interaction
	Multibeam bathymetry (most margins, led by NOAA and University of New Hampshire) and multichannel seismic reflection and refraction data (selected margins, including the Atlantic, led by USGS)		
NSF-sponsored seismic research	In 2014, the *Langseth* is scheduled to conduct two NSF-supported seismic surveys off the Atlantic seaboard to study sea-level changes and geologic framework: 1. The proposed NJ Margin survey area is located between ~39.3–39.7°N and ~73.2–73.8°W in the Atlantic Ocean, ~25–85 km off the coast of New Jersey. Water depths in the survey area are 30–75 m. The seismic survey would be conducted outside of state waters and within the U.S. EEZ, and is scheduled to occur for ~30 days during 3 June–9 July 2014. Some minor deviation from these dates is possible, depending on logistics and weather. 2. The proposed East North America Margin (ENAM) survey area is located between ~32–37°N and ~72–76.5°W in the Atlantic Ocean ~6–430 km off the coast of Cape Hatteras. Water depths in the survey area are 30–4300 m. The seismic surveys would be conducted outside of state waters and mostly within the U.S. EEZ, and partly in International Waters, and is scheduled to occur for ~38 days during 15 September–22 October 2014. Some minor deviation from these dates is possible, depending on logistics and weather.	Present	No spatial overlap as survey programs would be consecutive using the same vessel of opportunity*, R/V Langseth*

Activity	Description	Temporal Interaction with Project	Spatial Interaction
	Separate EAs are being prepared for those activities. Neither survey would overlap with the proposed USGS ECS Study Area.		
Future Geophysical Research	Other seismic research projects could be proposed in the region in the future, however none are currently planned by the USGS or NSF.	Future	The duration of a typical seismic research cruise ranges from 2 to 4 weeks with approx. 1 to 2 weeks of transit and/or preparation between cruises. Seismic operations may last 30-800 hr during a seismic survey. Consecutive cruises may occasionally occur in the same location or the same region, but they would not be expected to occur simultaneously in the same location.
Marine Traffic Shipping (domestic, international, tourism)	Over the 2014 to 2015 time period shipping and marine transportation activities in the Study Area may increase above the present level, due in part to the expansion of the Panama Canal, which is expected to be complete in 2014 and which would double its capacity	Past, Present, Future	Interaction could occur
Commercial Fishing	Fishing effort is diverse and shifting in response to stock locations	Past, Present, Future	Interaction could occur
Military	Over the 2014-2015 time period, there may be increases in military uses of the Study Area above present levels (BOEM PEIS, 2014).	Past, Present, Future	Interaction could occur
Submarine Cables	Seaborn Networks Seabras-1 telecommunication cable installation, with Ready For Service in 2015	Future	Interaction could occur with cable laying vessel

In addition to consideration of these projects and activities, the cumulative effects assessment also considers past biological and/or anthropogenic pressures that may have contributed to existing conditions within the Project Area (i.e., commercial whaling). Where applicable, these pressures and the resulting effects are reflected in the description of existing conditions. Table 22 provides an assessment of cumulative effects for those concurrent activities scoped above.

Table 22: Assessment of Cumulative Effects

Environmental or Socio-Economic Factor	Cumulative Effects Assessment
Marine Mammals	Because the sounds generated by seismic surveys are transient and do not "accumulate" in the environment, the most likely cumulative effects would be associated with other concurrent activities (e.g., cargo ships, tankers, other seismic surveys and fishing vessels). The cumulative effect is short term, intermittent and localized, with respect to effects on ESA-listed marine mammal species. The individual seismic survey vessel activity and noise would constitute a minor contribution to the overall noise generated by other such sources and space-user conflict, and would be of short duration in local areas. Based on current knowledge, and especially with the proposed mitigation procedures in place, the proposed project is not expected to result in, or contribute to, cumulative impacts on marine mammals, including threatened or endangered species.
Sea Turtles	Because sea turtles can be visually difficult to detect, the mitigation of visual avoidance may be less effective than for marine mammals. However, the source array would be shut down if a sea turtle is observed within the Exclusion Zone. PSVO's would maintain records of marine turtles sighted. Given the lack of systematic surveys for marine turtles in the Study Area, this opportunity for observation of sea turtles could add to the understanding of their distribution in the area.
Marine Fish	Marine fish populations in the Study Area may be affected by natural factors, such as changes in prey and predator populations in areas within their natural range that may occur outside the Study Area. Certain populations of marine fish are more vulnerable to changes in their environment. This is especially true of species of special concern. The distribution of most fish species varies seasonally in response to physical or chemical changes in the surrounding environment (e.g., depth, substrate, salinity, temperature) and as a result of seasonal habitat requirements (e.g., spawning, feeding). This shift is becoming more apparent to fishers with climate change influence resulting in water temperature and mass changes. Long annual migrations are undertaken by groundfish species, such as cod, halibut, shrimp and crab; and pelagic species such as tunas, swordfish, Atlantic salmon and sharks. The project would not change the physical or chemical requirements that dictate fish presence, and their ability to reproduce.

Environmental or Socio-Economic Factor	Cumulative Effects Assessment
	The residual effects of the project components on fin fish that may be cumulative with the effects of other human activities in the region are expected to be very limited, consisting primarily of short-term avoidance behavior. The predicted cumulative effects of the proposed seismic survey with noise from vessel traffic, and commercial fishing are similar to those discussed in the assessment above. Seismic surveys produce repetitive, localized and short-term increases in ambient noise levels, with the period between potential exposures ranging from hours to days. Beyond the FMZ, sound from a seismic survey is similar to commercial vessels (MMS 2004). With mitigation and monitoring procedures in place, the project components are predicted to have minimal interaction with fish species and are not anticipated to result in any cumulative adverse effects to any marine fish species The main cumulative impact on fish population would be the fishing activities that could occur at the same time as the seismic exploration. Research indicates that adverse seismic related effects are largely of a temporary behavioral level effect. Therefore, seismic surveys would not contribute adversely to cumulative effects to fish and shellfish. In general, the cumulative effect on fish populations would be short-term and localized. The proposed project would not be expected to result in or contribute to cumulative impacts on fish species.
Marine Birds	The *R/V Langseth* would comply with discharge regulations established by IMO and thus would not add to short-term or long-term effects of oil spillage on marine avifauna. Overall, there would be no cumulative adverse effects of this seismic exploration project expected to occur on the distribution, abundance, breeding status and general well-being of marine avifauna in or near the Study Area.
Marine Protected Areas	This seismic program would not encroach on any Marine Protected Areas, and therefore not contribute to any cumulative effects.
Marine Traffic	Effects from vessel traffic under the cumulative scenario are potentially adverse but minimal. With respect to vessel activity levels, the proposed seismic survey would represent a small portion of total vessel activity on the Atlantic OCS. Commercial fishing, commercial shipping and ocean study activities also would contribute to the cumulative vessel activity in the Study Area. The cumulative incremental impact attributed to the project vessel operations would be negligible.
Commercial Fisheries	Cumulative effects on commercial fisheries would be related to the space-use conflicts and noise associated with other users of the offshore resources. Seismic vessel activity would be a minor component of total marine transportation. Possible conflicts include the *Langseth*'s streamer entangling with fixed fishing gear and temporary displacement of fishers within the immediate vessel operating area. Little fixed fishing gear would be anticipated in the Study Area; however if encountered

Environmental or Socio-Economic Factor	Cumulative Effects Assessment
	during operations, the Langseth would attempt avoidance. Fishing activities could occur within the Study Area, however, a safe distance would need to be kept from the *Langseth* and the towed seismic equipment. Conflicts would be avoided through communication with the fishing community through publication of a Notice to Mariners about operations in the area. No damage would be anticipated to result from the project with proposed mitigation, and the project would thus not increase economic risk to fishing vessels. In general, because the sounds generated by seismic surveys are intermittent and non-stationary, the most likely cumulative effects would be associated with other concurrent activities (e.g., cargo ships, tankers, other seismic surveys, and fishing vessels). The cumulative effect would be expected to be short term, intermittent and localized. In general, the seismic survey vessel activity and noise would constitute a minor incremental contribution to the overall noise generated by other such sources and space-user conflict, and would be of short duration in local areas. Based on current knowledge, and especially with the proposed mitigation procedures in place, the proposed project would not be expected to result in or contribute to cumulative effects on commercial fisheries.

6 SUMMARY OF MITIGATION

An integral part of the planned survey is a monitoring and mitigation program designed to minimize potential impacts of the proposed activities on marine animals present during the proposed research and to document as well as possible the nature and extent of any effects. The planned monitoring and mitigation measures would minimize the possibility of any injurious effects to marine species and reduce the environmental disruption.

Table 23: Environmental Factor-Specific Mitigation Measures and Follow-Up

Environmental Factor	Mitigation Measures	Follow up and Monitoring
Marine Mammals and Turtles	Before start of the operations, vessel operator would review sail lines, scheduling, anticipated fishing vessels and gear types, mitigation measures, expectations of all parties and Emergency Response Plans PSVO's would be onboard the vessel throughout the duration of the survey and would record sightings of marine mammals and sea turtles per the IHA Use of Passive Acoustic Monitoring (PAM) to detect possible presence of marine mammals A 30 minute ramp-up procedure would be undertaken for seismic surveys Ramp-up would be delayed if a marine mammal were observed in the Exclusion Zone PSVO's would ensure the delay or shut down of seismic operations if ESA-listed mammals or turtles are present within the Exclusion Zone Collision avoidance practices, including speed and course adjustment. Ramp-up of seismic data acquisition only when EZ is entirely visible	PSVO reports would be available to NMFS and USFWS and the public. 90-day report required by NMFS summarizes all PSVO observations and mitigation actions
Sea Birds	PSVO's would monitor for foraging sea birds within the EZ	See 90-day report above
Marine Fish and Shellfish	None required	No follow up or monitoring required for routine activities
Marine Protected Areas	None required	No follow up or monitoring required for routine activities
Commercial Fisheries	A Notice to Mariners on the location and scheduling of seismic activities would be issued. The bridge crew on the vessel would monitor fishing activity in the vicinity of the seismic vessel and serve as a liaison between the fishing vessels and the seismic vessel Commence deployment of seismic system only if deployment area confirmed to be clear of fixed fishing gear or floating longline gear	No follow up or monitoring required for routine activities

Environmental Factor	Mitigation Measures	Follow up and Monitoring
Marine Traffic/ Military	A Notice to Mariners on the location and scheduling of seismic activities would be issued.	No follow up or monitoring required

7 LITERATURE CITED

Adams, C.E., T.J. Berger, W.C. Boicourt, J.C. Churchill, M.D. Earle, P. Hamilton, F.M. Vukovich, R.J. Wayland, and R.D. Watts. 1993. A Review of the Physical Oceanography of the Cape Hatteras, North Carolina Region: Volume I Literature Synthesis. MMS Contract 14-35-0001-30594. Science Applications International Corporation. 152 p.

Amato, R.V. 1994. Sand and Gravel Maps of the Atlantic Continental Shelf with Explanatory Text. U.S. Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service. OCS Monograph MMS-93.0037.

Andersen, J. M., Y. F. Wiersma, G. Stenson, M. O. Hammill, and A. Rosing-Asvid. 2009. Movement Patterns of Hooded Seals *(Cystophora cristata)* in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean During the Post-Moult and Pre-Breed Seasons. J. Northw. Atl. Fish Sci., 42: 1–11. doi:10.2960/J.v42.m649.

Barco, S.G., W.A. McLellan, J.M. Allen, R.A. Asmutis-Silvia, R. Mallon-Day, E.M. Meagher, D.A.Pabst, J.Robbins, R.E. Seton, W.M. Swingle, M.T. Weinrich, and P.J. Clapham. 2002. Population Identity of Humpback Whales (Megaptera novaeangliae) in the Waters of the U.S. Mid-Atlantic States. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management4 (2):135-141.

Baumgartner, M.F. and B.R. Mate. 2005. Summer and Fall Habitat of North Atlantic Right Whales (Eubalaema glacialis) Inferred from Satellite Telemetry. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 62:527-543.

Best, P.B. and C.H. Lockyer. 2002. Reproduction, Growth and Migration of Sei Whales Balaenoptera borealis Off the West Coast of South Africa in the 1960s. South African Journal of Marine Science 24:111-133.

Blanton, J.O., F.B. Schwing, A.H. Weber, L.J. Pietrafesa, and D.W. Hayes. 2013. Wind Stress Climatology in the South Atlantic Bight, in Oceanography of the Southeastern U.S. Continental Shelf (eds. Atkinson, L.P., D.W. Menzel, and K.A. Bush), American Geophysical Union, Washington, D. C.. doi: 10.1029/CO002p0010

BOEM (Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Gulf of Mexico OCS Region). 2012. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2012-005 - Atlantic OCS Proposed Geological and Geophysical Activities Mid-Atlantic and South Atlantic Planning Areas Draft Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement Volume I: Chapters 1-8; Volume II: Figures, Tables, Appendices, and Keyword Index. US Department of Interior Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Gulf of Mexico OCS Region. New Orleans.

BOEM (Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, U.S. Dept. of the Interior). 2011. Proposed Outer Continental Shelf Leasing Program, 2012-2017. November 2011. Internet website: http://www.boem.gov/uploadedFiles/Proposed_OCS_Oil_Gas_Lease_Program_2012-2017.pdf.

Budelmann, B.U. and R. Wouldiamson. 1994. Directional Sensitivity of Hair Cell Afferents in the Octopus statocyst. Journal of Experimental Biology 187:245-259.

Carwardine, M. 1995. Whales, Dolphins and Porpoises. Dorling Kindersley, London, UK, 257 p.

COSEWIC 2005. COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the fin whale Balaenoptera physalus in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa.ix + 37 pp.

Castellote, M., C. W. Clark, and M. O. Lammers. 2012. Acoustic and behavioural changes by fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) in response to shipping and airgun noise. Biological Conservation 147:115-122.

Cato, D. H. 2013. Ambient noise and its significance to aquatic life. Bioacoustics 17:21-23.

Ellison, W. T., B. L. Southall, C. W. Clark, and A. S. Frankel. 2012. A new context-based approach to assess marine mammal behavioral responses to anthropogenic sounds. Conservation Biology 26(1):21-28

Finneran, J. J. 2013. Auditory effects of intense sounds on odontocetes: Continuous, intermittent, and impulsive exposures. Bioacoustics 17:301-304.

Hawkins, A. 2013. Effects of noise on aquatic life: The key issues. Bioacoustics 17:7-10.

Holst, M., W.J. Richardson, W.R. Koski, M.A. Smultea, B. Haley, M.W. Fitzgerald, and M. Rawson. 2006. Effects of large- and small-source seismic surveys on marine mammals and sea turtles. Eos Transactions of the American Geophysical Union 87(36), Joint Assembly Supplement, Abstract OS42A-01. 23-26 May, Baltimore, MD.

Hutchinson, D.R., J.R. Childs, E. Hammer-Klose,S. Dadisman, T. Edgar, and G. Barth. 2004. A preliminary Assessment of Geologic Framework and Sediment Thickness Studies Relevant to Prospective US Submission on Extended Continental Shelf. U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report 2004-1447

Joyce, T.M. 1987. Meteorology and Air-Sea Interactions. In: Milliman, J.D. and W.R. Wright, eds. The Marine Environment of the U.S. Atlantic Continental Slope and Rise. Boston/Woods Hole, MA: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Inc. Pp. 5-26.

Kasuga, S., A. Nishizawa, Y. Ohara, K. Kusunoki and T. Katsura. 2000. Seismic Reflection and Refraction Methods. Continental Shelf Limits, the Scientific and Legal Interface. Edited by Peter Cook and Chris Carleton. Oxford University Press. Pp 177 – 193.

Kenney R.D. and H.E. Winn. 1987. Cetacean Biomass Densities Near Submarine Canyons Compared to Adjacent Shelf/Slope Areas. Continental Shelf Research 7:107-114.

Ketten, D. R. 2013. Underwater ears and the physiology of impacts: Comparative liability for hearing loss in sea turtles, birds, and mammals. Bioacoustics 17:312-315.

Kight, C. R., and J. P. Swaddle. 2011. How and why environmental noise impacts animals: An integrative, mechanistic review. Ecology Letters.

Løkkeborg, S., E. Ona, A. Vold, A. Salthaug, and J. M. Jech. 2012. Sounds from seismic air guns: Gear- and species-specific effects on catch rates and fish distribution. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 69(8):1278-1291.

Knowlton, A.R., J. Sigurjósson, J.N. Ciano, and S.D. Kraus. 1992. Long-Distance Movements of North Atlantic Right Whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Mar. Mamml Sci. 8:397-405.

Lentz, S.J., S. Elgar, and R.T. Guza. 2003. Observations of the Flow Field Near the Nose of a Buoyant Coastal Current. Journal of Physical Oceanography 33:933-943.

Lurton, X. and S. DeRuiter. 2011. Sound Radiation of Seafloor-mapping Echosounders in the Water Column, in Relation to the Risks Posed to Marine Mammals. Intl. Hydrographic Review, November 2011. Available at: http://www.iho.int/mtg_docs/IHReview/2011/IHR_Nov032011.pdf.

Lynch, P.D., J.E. Graves, and R.J. Latour. 2011. Challenges in the assessment and management of highly migratory bycatch species: a case study of the Atlantic marlins. Pages 197. 225 in W. W. Taylor, A. J. Lynch, and M. G. Schechter, editors. Sustainable fisheries: multilevel approaches to a global problem. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD.

Mann, D.A., D.M. Higgs, W.N. Tavolga, M.J. Souza, and A.N. Popper. 2001. Ultrasound Detection by Clupeiforme Fishes. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 109:3048-3054.

Mate, B.M., S. L. Nieukirk, and S.D. Kraus. 1997. Satellite-Monitored Movements of the Northern Right Whale Journal of Wildlife Management. 61:1393-1405.

McCauley, R.D., J. Fewtrell, A.J. Duncan, C. Jenner, M.-N. Jenner, J.D. Penrose, R.I.T. Prince, A. Adhitya, J. Murdoch, and K. McCabe. 2000a. Marine Seismic Surveys: Analysis of airgun signals; and effects of air gun exposure on humpback whales, sea turtles, fishes and squid. Report from Centre for Marine Science and Technology, Curtin University, Perth, Western Australia, for Australian Petroleum Production Association, Sydney, NSW.

McCauley, R.D., J. Fewtrell, A.J. Duncan, C. Jenner, M.-N. Jenner, J.D. Penrose, R.I.T. Prince, A. Adhitya, J. Murdoch and K. McCabe. 2000b. Marine Seismic Surveys: A study of environmental implications. APPEA Journal 40:692-706.

McGregor, B.A. 1983. Environmental Geologic Studies on the United States Mid- and North Atlantic Other Continental Shelf Area 1980-1982. U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report 83-824.

McLellan, W.M., A.S. Friedlaender, J.G. Mead, C.W. Potter, and D.A. Pabst. 2003. Analysing 25 Years of Bottlenose Dolphin (Tursiops truncatus) Strandings Along the Atlantic Coast of the USA: do historic records support the coastal migratory stock hypothesis? Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 4:297-304.

Mellinger, D.K., S.L. Nieukirk, K. Klinck, H. Klinck, R.P. Dziak, P.J. Clapham, and B. Brandsdóttir. 2011. Confirmation of Right Whales Near a Nineteenth-Century Whaling Ground East of Southern Greenland. Biol. Lett. 7:411-413.

Mendenhall, V.M. 2004. Seabirds in the Marine Environment. Web reference at http://www.pbs.org/ harriman/explog/lectures/mendenhall2.html.\

Michel, J. (ed.). 2013. South Atlantic information resources: data search and literature synthesis. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA. OCS Study BOEM 2013-01157. 984 pp.

MMS. 2004. Geological and Geophysical Exploration for Mineral Resources on the Gulf of Mexico Outer Continental Shelf Final Programmatic Environmental Assessment. OCS EIS/EA MMS 2004-054. Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA. July.

NAMMC (North Atlantic Marine Mammal Commission). 1995. Report of the Joint Meeting of the Scientific Committee Working Groups on Northern Bottlenose and Killer Whales and Management Procedures. p. 89-99 In: NAMMCO Annual Report 1995, NAMMCO, Tromsø, Norway.

National Science Foundation. 2012. Record of Decision for Marine Seismic Research Funded by the National Science Foundation Arlington, Va. http://www.nsf.gov/geo/oce/envcomp/rod-marine-seismic-research-june2012.pdf

National Science Foundation. 2014. Draft Environmental Assessment of a Marine Geophysical Survey by the R/V Marcus G. Langseth in the Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras, September–October 2014 https://www.nsf.gov/geo/oce/envcomp/enam-2014-draftea-2014-2may2014.pdf

National Science Foundation, U.S. Geological Survey, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 2011. Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/overseas Environmental Impact Statement for Marine Seismic Research Funded by the National Science Foundation Or Conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey. Arlington, Va.

New England Fishery Management Council (NEFMC). 2011. Framework Adjustment 3 to the Red Crab Fishery Management Plan.

New England Fishery Management Council (NEFMC). 2002. Fishery Management Plan for Deep-Sea Red Crab (Chaceon quinquedens) Including an Environmental Impact Statement, an Initial Regulatory Flexibility Act Analysis, and a Regulatory Impact Review. Newburyport, MA. http://www.nefmc.org/crab/index.html. Accessed on November 2, 2013.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 1998. Recovery Plan for the Shortnose Sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum). Prepared by the Shortnose Sturgeon Recovery Team for the National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. 104 p.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2000. Small Takes of Marine Mammals Incidental to Specified Activities; marine seismic-reflection data collection in southern California. Federal Register 65:16374-16379.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2001. Stock Structure of Coastal Bottlenose Dolphins Along the Atlantic Coast of the US. Prepared for the Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Team. Southeast Fisheries Science Center, Miami, FL.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2005. Endangered Fish and Wildlife; Notice of Intent to Prepare an Environmental Impact Statement. Federal Register 70:1871-1875.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2012. Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis) 5 Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service) and FWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 2005. Recovery Plan for the Gulf of Maine Distinct Population Segment of Atlantic Salmon (Salmo salar). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service) and FWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 2008. Recovery Plan for the Northwest Atlantic Population of the Loggerhead Sea Turtle (Caretta caretta), Second Revision. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.

NRC (National Research Council). 1990. Decline of the Sea Turtles: Causes and Preventions. National Academy Press, Washington, DC.

Nedwell, J.R. and A.W.H. Turnpenny. 1998. The Use of a Generic Frequency Weighting Scale in Estimating Environmental Effect. Proceedings of Workshop on Seismics and Marine Mammals. June 1998, London, UK.

NOAA. n.d. Ecology of the Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf: deep corals. Accessed on 26 June 2013 at www.nefsc.noaa.gov/ecosys/ecology/Corals/.

NOAA and NMFS. 2012. Ecosystem Status Report for the Northeast Shelf Large Marine Ecosystem - 2011. US Dept Commer, Northeast Fish Sci Cent Ref Doc. 12-07; 32 p.

NOAA. 2009. Introduction to the Highly Migratory Species Management Division. December 2009. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/hms/intro_HMS.htm. Accessed October 4, 2013.

NOAA. 2012. 2012 Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) Report for Atlantic Highly Migratory Species. Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Management Division, December 2012. 204 pp.

NOAA. 2013a. NOAA Office of Science and Technology – Commercial Fisheries Statistics. http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/st1/commercial. Accessed October 21, 2013.

NOAA. 2013b. 2013 bottlenose dolphin unusual mortality event in the mid-Atlantic. Accessed on 20 March 2014 at: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/health/mmume/midatldolphins2013.html

Nowacek, D. 2013. Responsible practices for minimizing and monitoring environmental impacts of marine seismic surveys with an emphasis on marine mammals. Aquatic Mammals 39(4):356-377.

Nowacek, D. P., and P. L. Tyack. 2013. Assessing effects of anthropogenic noise on the behaviour of marine mammals. Bioacoustics 17:338-341.

Offutt, G.C. 1970. Acoustic Stimulus Perception by the American Lobster, Homarus americanus (Decapoda). Experientia 26: 1276-1278.

Palka, D.L. 2006. Summer Abundance Estimates of Cetaceans in US North Atlantic Navy Operating Areas. Northeast Fisheries Science Center Reference Document 06-03. NMFS, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, MA.

Pickard, G.L. and W.J. Emery. 1990. Descriptive Physical Oceanography, an Introduction. 5th ed. Elsevier, Woburn, MA.

Pierson, M.O., J.P. Wagner, V. Langford, P. Birnie, and M.L. Tasker. 1998. Protection From, and Mitigation Of, the Potential Effects of Seismic Exploration on Marine Mammals. Chapter 7 in M.L. Tasker and C. Weir, eds. Proceedings of the Seismic and Marine Mammals Workshop, London, 23-25 June 1998.

Pike, D.G., G.A. Víkingsson, T. Gunnlaugsson, and N. Øien. 2009. A Note on the Distribution and Abundance of Blue Whales (Balaenoptera musculus) in the Central and Northeast North Atlantic. NAMMCO Sci. Publ. 7:19-29.

Poag, C.W. 1982. Stratigraphic Reference Section for Georges Bank Basin--Depositional Model for New England Passive Margin. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, 66: 1021 – 1041.

Prieto R., M.A. Silva, I. Cascão, M.J. Cruz, C.I.B. Oliveira, G. Waring, and J. Gonçalves. 2010. The Importance of Oceanic Fronts in the Labrador Sea to North Atlantic Sei Whales (Balaenoptera borealis): Clues from satellite telemetry. Presentation at 4th Arctic Frontiers Conf., 24–29 January 2010, Tromsø, Norway.

Ray, G.C., B.P. Hayden, M.G. McCormick-Ray, and T.M. Smith. 1998. Land-Seascape Diversity of the U.S.A. East Coast Coastal Zone with Particular Reference to Estuaries. In: Ormand, R.F.G., J.D. Gage, and M.V. Angel, eds. Marine biodiversity, patterns and processes. Cambridge University Press. Pp. 337-371.

Read, A.J., P.N. Halpin, L.B. Crowder, B.D. Best, and E. Fujioka (eds.). 2009. OBIS-SEAMAP: Mapping marine mammals, birds and turtles. World Wide Web electronic publication. Accessed on 16 June 2013 at http://seamap.env.duke.edu.

Reeves, R.R., B.S. Stewart, P.J. Clapham, and J.A. Powell. 2002. Guide to Marine Mammals of the World. New York: Alfred A. Knopf. 527 p.

Reilly, S.B., J.L. Bannister, P.B. Best, M. Brown, R.L. Brownell Jr., D.S. Butterworth, P.J. Clapham, J. Cooke, G.P. Donovan, J. Urbán, and A.N. Zerbini. 2008. Balaenoptera edeni. In: IUCN 2012. IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2013.1. www.iucnredlist.org. Downloaded on 18 June 2013.

Richards P.M., S.P. Epperly, S.S. Heppell, R.T. King, C.R. Sasso, F. Moncada, G. Nodarse, D.J. Shaver, Y. Medina, and J. Zurita. 2011. Sea Turtle Population Estimates Incorporating Uncertainty: a new approach applied to western North Atlantic loggerheads (*Caretta caretta*). Endangered Species Res 15: 151–158.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr. C.I. Malme and D. H. Thomson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Richardson, W. J. 2013. Effects of noise on aquatic life: Much known, much unknown. Bioacoustics 17(1-3):13-16.

Schilling, M.R., I. Seipt, M.T. Weinrich, S.E. Frohock, A.E. Kuhlberg, and P.J. Clapham. 1992. Behaviour of Individually-Identified Sei Whale Balaenoptera borealis During an Episodic Influx into the Southern Gulf of Maine in 1986. Fisheries Bulletin 90:749-755.

Schreiber, E.A. and J. Burger. 2002. Seabirds in the Marine Environment, pp. 1-15. In: E.A. Schreiber and J. Burger, eds. Biology of marine birds. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

SCRS. 2012. Report of the standing committee on research and statistics. ICCAT SCRS. Madrid, Spain, October 1-5, 2012. http://www.iccat.int/en/scrs.htm. Accessed on October 12, 2013.

Sheridan, R.E. and J.A. Grow, eds. 1988. The Atlantic Continental Margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. 1-2, 610 pp.

Shen, C.Y., R.A. Fusina, and L.K. Shay. 2000. An Assessment of Local Coastal Dynamics Observed with High-Frequency Radar. Journal of Geophysical Research 105(C3):6517-6530.

Smith-Vaniz, W.F., B.B. Collette, and B.E. Luckhurst. 1999. Fishes of Bermuda: History, zoogeography, annotated checklist, and identification keys. American Society of Ichthyologists and Herpetologists Special Publication Number 4, Lawrence, KS.

Southall, B.L., A.E. Bowles, W.T. Ellison, J.J. Finneran, R.L. Gentry, C.R. Greene, Jr., D. Kastak, D.R. Ketten, J.H. Miller, P.E. Nachtigall, W.J. Richardson, J.A. Thomas, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Marine Mammal Noise Exposure Criteria: initial scientific recommendations. Aquatic Mammals 33:411-521.

Southall, B., and coauthors. 2013a. U.S. regulation of the effects of sound on marine life: NOAA's mandates and use of scientific information. Bioacoustics 17:275-278.

Southall, B. L., and coauthors. 2013b. Marine mammal noise-exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. Bioacoustics 17:273-275.

Stevenson, D. K., L. Chiarella, D. Stephan, R. Reid, K. Wilhelm, J. McCarthy, and M. Pentony. 2004. Characterization of the fishing practices and the marine benthic ecosystems of the northeast U.S. shelf, and an evaluation of the potential effects of fishing on Essential Fish Habitat. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-181.

Stevick, P.T., J. Allen, P.J. Clapham, N. Friday, S.K. Katona, F. Larsen, J. Lien, D.K. Mattila, P.J. Palsbøll, J. Sigurjónsson, T.D. Smith, N. Øien, and P.S. Hammond. 2003. North Atlantic Humpback Whale Abundance and Rate of Increase Four Decades After Protection from Whaling. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 258:263-273.

Swingle, W.M., S.G. Barco, T.D. Pitchford, W.A. McLellan, and D.A. Pabst. 1993. Appearance of Juvenile Humpback Whales Feeding in the Nearshore Waters of Virginia. Marine Mammal Science 9(3):309-315.

Templeman, N.D. 2010. Ecosystem Status and Trends Report for the Newfoundland and Labrador Shelf. DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Res. Doc. 2010/026 vi + 72 p.

Thomas, L., M. O.Hammill and W. D. Bowen. 2011. Estimated Size of the Northwest Atlantic Grey Seal Population 1977-2010. DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Res. Doc. 2011/017. iv + 23 p.

Turnpenny, A.W.H. and J.R. Nedwell. 1994. Consultancy Report: The Effects on Marine Fish, Diving Mammals and Birds of Underwater Sound Generated by Seismic Surveys. FCR 089/94. Prepared by Fawley aquatic research laboratories, Ltd. for the UK Offshore Operators Association.

UNEP-WCMC (United Nations Environment Programme-World Conservation Monitoring Centre). 2013. Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Flora and Fauna. Appendices I, II, and III. Valid from 12 June 2013. Accessed on 18 June 2013 at http://www.cites.org/eng/app/appendices.php.

Urick, R.J. 1983. Principles of Underwater Sound, McGraw-Hill Publishing Company.

U.S. Dept. of Commerce, National Marine Fisheries Service. 2010. Final Recovery Plan for the Fin Whale *(Balaenoptera physalus).* Silver Spring, MD. 121 p. Accessed on 21 June 2013 at http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/recovery/finwhale.pdf.http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/ggge.20181

USGS (United States Geological Survey) 2013. Record of Decision for "Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement for Marine Seismic Research Funded by the National Science Foundation Conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey" http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/environmental_compliance/reports/FINAL_USGSROD_textonly_signed27Feb2013.pdf

USGS (United States Geological Survey). 2013. The Baltimore Canyon Trough. Accessed on 2 June 2013 at http://3dparks.wr.usgs.gov/nyc/mesozoic/baltimorecanyon.htmhttp://3dparks.wr.usgs.gov/nyc/mesozoic/baltimorecanyon.htm

USGS 2014. Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act. by U.S. Geological Survey . Mapping the U.S. Extended Continental Shelf Region of the Atlantic Seaboard. 2-D Survey Program August-September 2014. January 2014. Submitted to: National Marine Fisheries Service. Office of Protected Resources. 1315 East-West Hwy. Silver Spring, MD 20910.

Verity, P.G., T.N. Lee, J.A. Yoder, G.A. Paffenhofer, J.O. Blanton, and C.R. Alexander. 1993. Outer Shelf Processes. In: Menzel, D.W., ed. Ocean Processes: U.S. Southeast Continental Shelf: A summary of research conducted in the South Atlantic Bight under the auspices of the U.S. Department of Energy from 1977 to 1991. U.S. Department of Energy, Washing, DC. Pp. 45-74.

Víkingsson, G.A., D.G. Pike, G. Desportes, N. Øien, Th. Gunnlaugsson, and D. Bloch. 2009. Distribution and Abundance of Fin Whales (Balaenoptera physalus) in the Northeast and Central Atlantic as Inferred from the North Atlantic Sightings Surveys 1987–2001. NAMMCO Sci. Publ. 7:49-72.

Villa, E., J.D. Hart, A. de C. Baker, and V. Rossin. 2011. Fin Whales Feeding on Northern Krill off Pico Island (Azores) during Spring Migration. Poster, 25th Europ. Cetac. Soc. Conf., Cadiz, Spain, 21-23 March 2011.

Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel (eds.). 2012. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments-2011. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-221. Nat. Mar. Fish. Serv., Northeast Fish. Sci. Center, Woods Hole, MA. 319 p.

Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel, (eds.) 2010 U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments-2010. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE 219. 598 p.

Watanabe, S., A. Metaxas, J. Sameoto, P. Lawton. 2009. Patterns in Abundance and Size of Two Deep-Water Gorgonian Octocorals, in Relation to Depth and Substrate Features off Nova Scotia. Deep-Sea Research I 56:2235-2248.

Weir, C.R. 2007. Observations of Marine Turtles in Relation to Seismic Airgun Sound off Angola. Marine Turtle Newsletter 116:17-20

Weir, C.R. and S.J. Dolman. 2007. Comparative Review of the Regional Marine Mammal Mitigation Guidelines Implemented During Industrial Seismic Surveys, and Guidance Towards a Worldwide Standard. J. Intl. Wildlife Law & Policy 10:1-27.

Whitehead, H. 2002. Estimates of the Current Global Population Size and Historical Trajectory for Sperm Whales. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 242:295-304.

Wursig, B., T.A Jefferson, and D.J. Schmidly. 2000. The Marine Mammals of the Gulf of Mexico. College Station, TX: Texas A&M University Press. 232 p

8 LIST OF PREPARERS

Sue Belford (YOLO)

Kent Simpson (GeoSpatial)

Sara Bowman (E&E)

David Trimm (E&E)

Tony LaPierre (RPS)

Teresa Trenck (RPS)

Jonathan R. Childs (USGS)

APPENDIX A:
ACOUSTIC MODELING OF SEISMIC SOURCE

Helene Carton, PhD, L-DEO

The airgun array that would be used for the USGS East coast survey is the full 4-string 6600-in^3 array, which is described and illustrated in § 2.2.3.1 of the NSF/USGS PEIS (hereafter NSF/USGS PEIS). It would be towed at a depth of 9 m. The shot interval would be 50 meters (20 to 22 seconds).

Received sound levels have been predicted by L-DEO's model (Diebold et al. 2010 provided as in the NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H), as a function of distance from the airguns, for the 36-airgun array at any tow depth and for a single 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun, which would be used during power downs. This modeling approach uses ray tracing for the direct wave traveling from the array to the receiver and its associated source ghost (reflection at the air-water interface in the vicinity of the array), in a constant-velocity half-space (infinite homogeneous ocean layer, unbounded by a seafloor). In addition, propagation measurements of pulses from the 36-airgun array at a tow depth of 6 m have been reported in ~1600 m water depth (deep water), 50 m depth (shallow water) and a slope site (intermediate water depth) in the Gulf of Mexico in 2007–2008 (Tolstoy et al. 2009; Diebold et al. 2010), while propagation measurements of pulses from the 18-airgun 2-string array also at a tow depth of 6 m have been reported for the same shallow and deep sites (Diebold et al. 2010).

For deep and intermediate-water cases, these field measurements cannot be used readily to derive mitigation radii, as at those sites the calibration hydrophone was located at a roughly constant depth of 350-500 meters, which may not intersect all the sound pressure level (SPL) isopleths at their widest point from the sea surface down to the maximum relevant water depth for marine mammals of ~2000 meters. Figures 2 and 3 in the NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H show how the values along the maximum SPL line that connects the points where the isopleths attain their maximum width (providing the maximum distance associated with each sound level) may differ from values obtained along a constant depth line. At short ranges, where the direct arrivals dominate and the effects of seafloor interactions are minimal, the data recorded at the deep and slope sites are suited for comparison with modeled levels at the depth of the calibration hydrophone. At larger ranges, the comparison with the mitigation model - constructed from the maximum SPL through the entire water column at varying distances from the airgun array - is the most relevant. The results are summarized below.

In deep and intermediate-water environments, comparisons at short ranges between sound levels for direct arrivals recorded by the calibration hydrophone and model results for the same array tow depth are in good agreement (Figures 12 and 14 in the NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H). As a consequence, isopleths falling within this domain can be reliably predicted by the L-DEO model, while they may be imperfectly sampled by measurements recorded at a single depth. At larger distances, the calibration data show that seafloor reflected and sub-seafloor refracted arrivals dominate, while the direct arrivals become weak and/or incoherent (Figures 11, 12 and 16 in the NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H). Aside from local topography effects, the region around the critical distance (~5 km in Figures 11 & 12, and ~4 km in Figure 16 in the NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H) is where the observed levels rise very close to the mitigation model curve. However, the observed sound levels are found to fall almost entirely below the mitigation model curve (Figures 11, 12 and 16 in NSF/USGS PEIS Appendix H). Thus, analysis of the GoM calibration measurements demonstrates that although simple, the L-DEO model is a robust tool for estimating mitigation radii.

The proposed survey on the East coast margin would acquire data with the 36-airgun array at a tow depth of 9 m. The survey would take place entirely in deep water (> 1000 m). We use the deep-water radii obtained from 9-m tow depth L-DEO model results down to a maximum water depth of 2000 meters (Figure A1).

Measurements have not been reported for the single 40-in^3 airgun. The 40-in^3 airgun fits under the NSF/USGS PEIS low-energy sources. In § 2.4.2 of the NSF/USGS PEIS, Alternative B (the Preferred Alternative) conservatively applies a 100-m exclusion zone (EZ) for all low-energy acoustic sources in water depths >100 m. This approach is adopted here for the single Bolt 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun that would be used during power downs. In addition, L-DEO model results are used to determine the 160 and 190 dB radii for the 40-in^3 airgun in deep water (Figure A2).

Table A1 shows the distances at which the 160, 180 and 190 dB RMS sound levels are expected to be received for the 36-airgun array and the single (mitigation) airgun.

The 180-dB re 1 μPa_{rms} distance is the safety criterion as specified by NMFS (2000) for cetaceans. The 180-dB distance would also be used as the exclusion zone for sea turtles, as required by NMFS in most other recent seismic projects (e.g., Smultea et al. 2004; Holst and Beland 2008; Holst and Smultea 2008). If marine mammals or sea turtles are detected within or about to enter the appropriate exclusion zone, the airguns would be immediately powered down (or shut down if necessary).

Southall et al. (2007) made detailed recommendations for new science-based noise exposure criteria. Although USGS is aware that NOAA is revising acoustic guidance for marine mammals, at the time of preparation of this Draft EA, NOAA has not issued an official revised version of that policy. As such, this Draft EA has been prepared in accordance with the current NOAA acoustic guidance and the procedures are based on best practices noted by Pierson et al. (1998) and Weir and Dolman (2007).

References Cited

Diebold, J.B., M. Tolstoy, L. Doermann, S.L. Nooner, S.C. Webb, and T.J. Crone. 2010. R/V Marcus G. Langseth seismic source: modeling and calibration. Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst. 11(12), Q12012, doi:10.1029/2010GC003126.

Holst, M. and J. Beland. 2008. Marine Mammal and Sea Turtle monitoring during the Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's seismic testing and calibration study in the norther Gulf of Mexico, November 2007 – February 2008. LGL Rep. TA4295-2

Holst, M. and M.A. Smultea. 2008. Marine mammal monitoring and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's marine seismic program off Central America, February – April 2008. LGL Rep. TA4243-3.

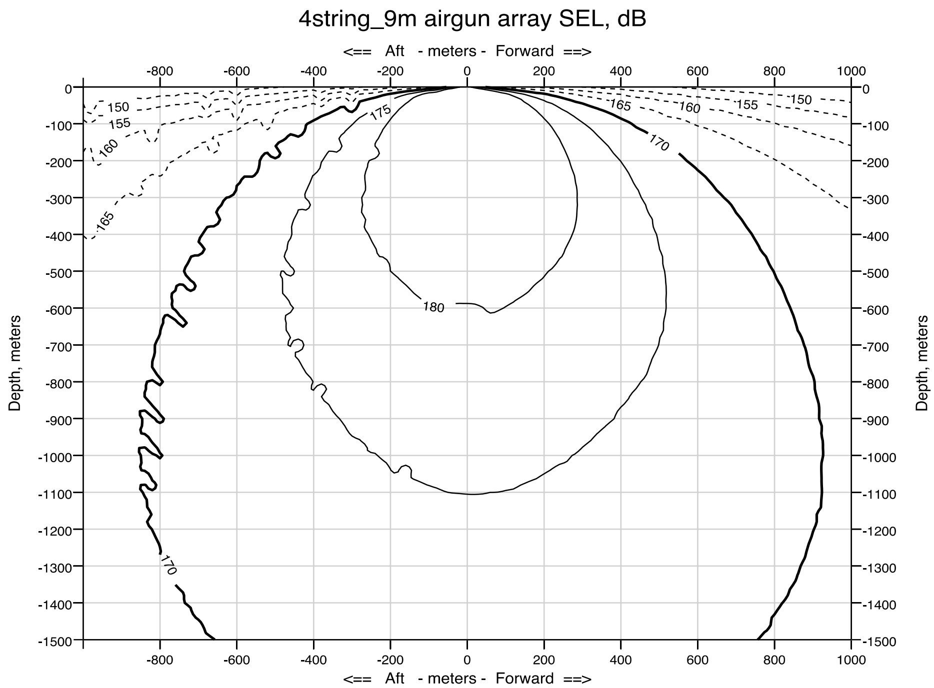
NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2000. Small Takes of Marine Mammals Incidental to Specified Activities; marine seismic-reflection data collection in southern California. Federal Register 65:16374-16379.

Pierson, M.O., J.P. Wagner, V. Langford, P. Birnie, and M.L. Tasker. 1998. Protection from, and mitigation of, the potential effects of seismic exploration on marine mammals. Chapter 7 In: M.L. Tasker and C. Weir (eds.), Proc. Seismic Mar. Mamm. Worksh., London, U.K., 23–25 June 1998.

Smultea, M.A., M. Holst, W.R. Koski, and S. Stoltz. 2004. Marine mammal monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's Seismic Program in the Southeast Caribbean Sea and adjacent Atlantic Ocean, April-June 2004. LGL Report TA2822-26.

Southall, B.L., A.E. Bowles, W.T. Ellison, J.J. Finneran, R.L. Gentry, C.R. Greene Jr., D. Kastak, D.R. Ketten, J.H. Miller, P.E. Nachtigall, W.J. Richardson, J.A. Thomas, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Marine mammal noise expos- ure criteria: initial scientific recommendations. Aquat. Mamm. 33(4):411-522.

Weir, C.R. and S.J. Dolman. 2007. Comparative review of the regional marine mammal mitigation guidelines implemented during industrial seismic surveys, and guidance towards a worldwide standard. **J. Int. Wildl. Law Policy** 10(1):1-27.



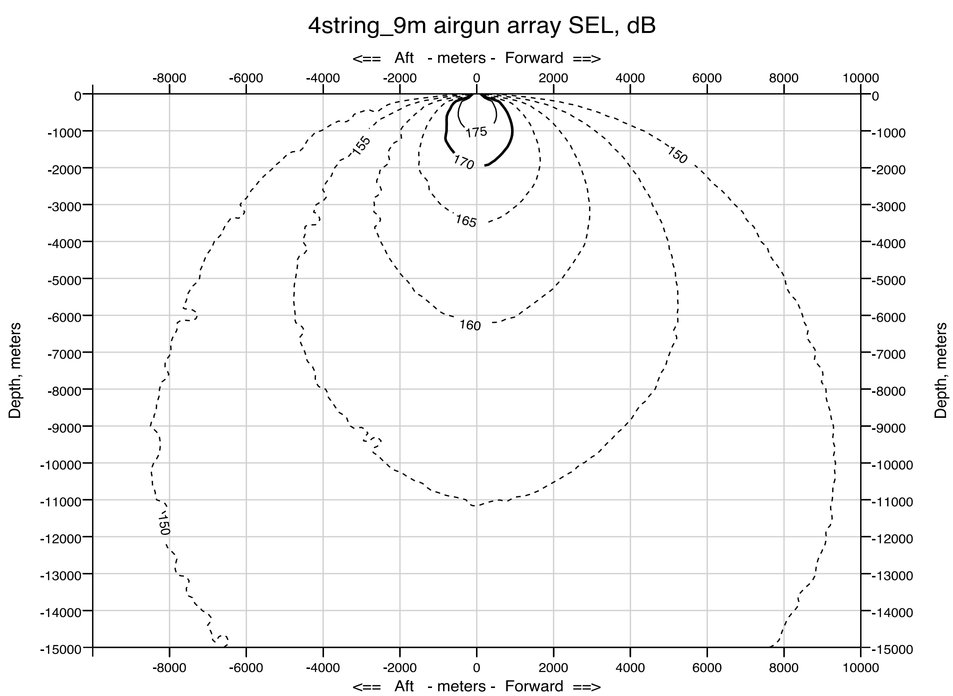


FIGURE A1. Modeled deep-water received sound levels (SELs) from the 36-airgun array planned for use during the survey, at a 9-m tow depth. Received RMS levels (SPLs) are expected to be ~10 dB higher. Plot at the top provides radius to the 170 dB SEL isopleths as a proxy for the 180 dB RMS isopleths and plot at the bottom provides radius to the 150 dB SEL isopleth as a proxy for the 160 dB RMS isopleth.

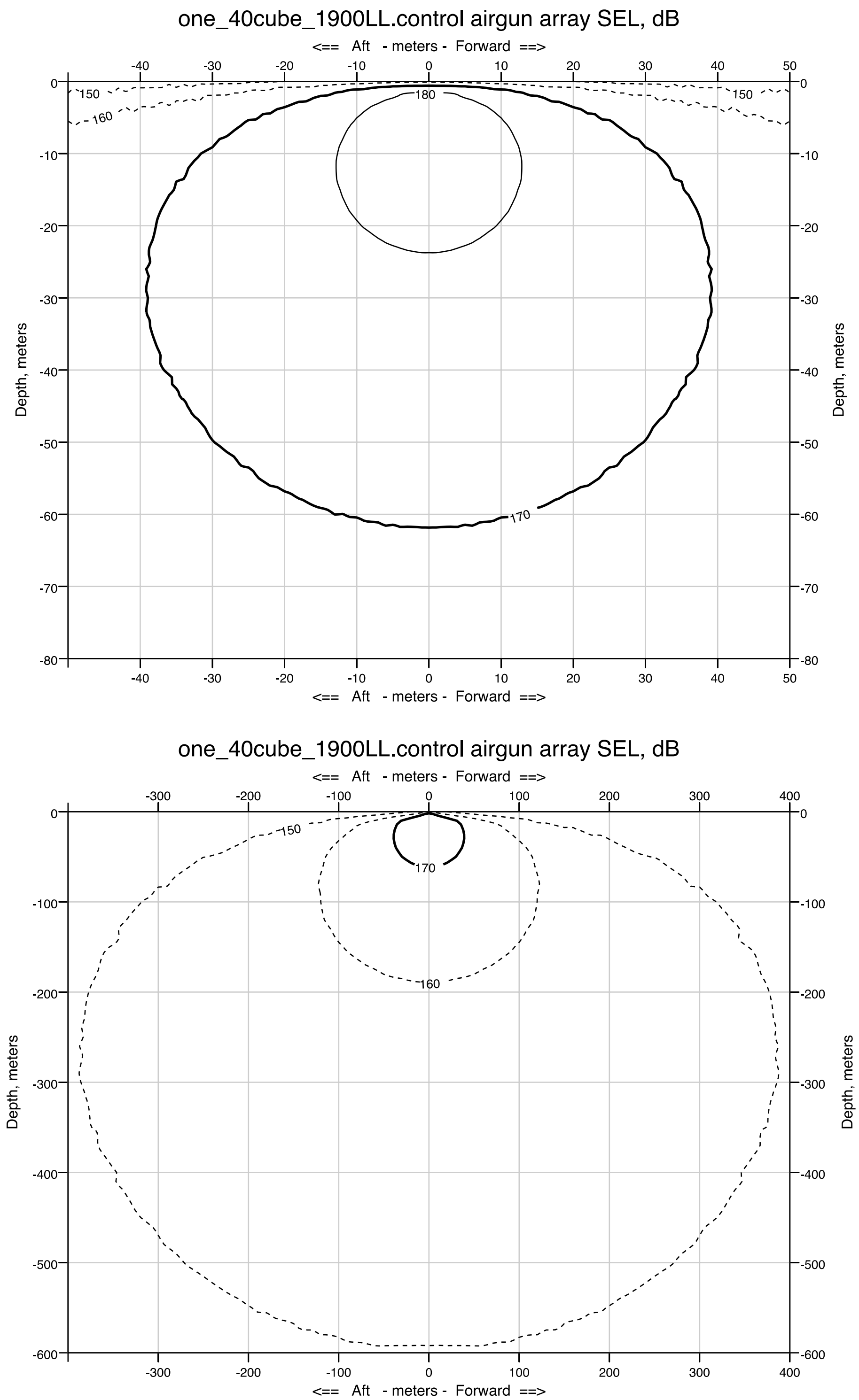


FIGURE A2. Modeled deep-water received sound levels (SELs) from a single 40-in^3 airgun towed at 9 m depth, which is planned for use as a mitigation gun during the proposed survey. Received RMS levels (SPLs) are expected to be ~10 dB higher. Plot at the top provides radius to the 170 dB SEL isopleths as a proxy for the 180 dB RMS isopleths and plot at the bottom provides radius to the 150 dB SEL isopleth as a proxy for the 160 dB RMS isopleth.

TABLE A1. Predicted distances to which sound levels ≥190, 180 and 160 dB re 1 μPa_{rms} are expected to be received during the proposed survey on the East coast margin in 2014 and 2015. For the single mitigation airgun, the EZ represents the conservative EZ for all low-energy acoustic sources in water depths >100 m defined in the NSF/USGS PEIS.

Source and Volume	**Water Depth (m)**	**Predicted RMS Radii (m)**		
		190 dB	**180 dB**	**160 dB**
Single Bolt airgun, 40 in^3	>1000 m	13	100	388
36-gun array totaling 6600 in^3	>1000 m	286	927	5780

APPENDIX B:

Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act

by
U.S. Geological Survey

2-D Seismic Reflection Scientific Research Survey Program: Mapping the U.S. Atlantic Seaboard Extended Continental Shelf Region and Investigating Tsunami Hazards, August-September 2014 and April-August, 2015

Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act

by
U.S. Geological Survey

2-D Seismic Reflection Scientific Research Survey Program: Mapping the U.S. Atlantic Seaboard Extended Continental Shelf Region and Investigating Tsunami Hazards, August-September 2014 and April-August, 2015

March 2014

Submitted to:

National Marine Fisheries Service
Office of Protected Resources
1315 East-West Hwy
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Request Prepared by:

ecology and environment, inc.
Global Environmental Specialists

Ecology and Environment, Inc.
348 Southport Circle
Virginia Beach, VA 23452

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF FIGURES

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

µ	micro
2-D	two dimensional
BOEM	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
CeTAP	Cetaceans and Turtle Assessment Program
dB	decibel
ECS	extended continental shelf
EEZ	Exclusive Ecomonic Zone
EIS	*Environmental Impact Statement*
ESA	Endangered Species Act
EZ	exclusion zone
IHA	Incidental Harassment Authorization
in^3	cubic inch(es)
kHz	kiloHertz
kw	kilowatt(s)
L-DEO	Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory
MBES	multibeam echosounder
NASA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NEFSC	Northeast Fisheries Science Center
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NODE	(U.S. Department of the) Navy Operating Area (OPAREA) Density Estimates
NSF	National Science Foundation
OBIS	Ocean Biogeographic Information System
OEIS	*Overseas Environmental Impact Statement*
OPAREA	Operating Area
Pa	Pascal
PAM	Passive acoustic monitoring
PEIS	*Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (EIS)/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (OEIS) for Marine Seismic Research funded by the National Science Foundation or Conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey* (June 2011)
PSAO	Protected Species Acoustic Observer

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS, CONTINUED

PSVO	Protected Species Visual Observer
PTS	permanent threshold shift
R/V Langseth	*Research Vessel Marcus G. Langseth*
RMS	root-mean-squared
SAR	Stock Assessment Report
SBP	sub-bottom profiler
SEFSC	Southeast Fisheries Science Center
SEL	sound exposure level
SERDP	Strategic Environmental and Development Program
SPL	sound pressure level
TTS	temporary threshold shift
UME	Unusual Mortality Event
USGS	United States Geological Survey

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE ACTIVITY

A detailed description of the specific activity or class of activities that can be expected to result in incidental taking of marine mammals.

Overview of the Activity

The United States Geological Survey (USGS), Coastal and Marine Geology Program (Debbie Hutchinson, Principal Investigator), plans to conduct a regional marine two dimensional (2-D) seismic survey in the northwest Atlantic Ocean within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) and extending into International Waters as far as 350 nautical miles from the U.S. coast (Study Area) (**Figure 1**). Water depths in the Study Area range from approximately 1,400 meters to 5,400 meters. The proposed USGS survey is planned to be conducted in two phases; one survey during August and September, 2014, and the second survey is expected to take place between April 1 and August 31, 2015 (specific dates to be determined). The activities for both Phase 1 and Phase 2 are included in this application (**Figure 2**).

USGS plans to use conventional marine seismic methodology to: (1) establish the outer limits of the U.S. continental shelf, also referred to as the Extended Continental Shelf (ECS) as defined by Article 76 of the Convention of the Law of the Sea; and (2) study the sudden mass transport of sediments down the continental shelf as submarine landslides that may pose significant tsunamigenic (i.e., earthquake potential along the subduction zone) hazards to the Atlantic and Caribbean coastal communities.

The proposed survey will use the *Research Vessel Marcus G. Langseth* (*R/V Langseth*) as the sole source vessel. To conduct the proposed survey, the *R/V Langseth* will deploy a 36-airgun array as the energy source and one 8-kilometer multichannel hydrophone cable as the receiving system. The hydrophone cable will receive the returning acoustic signals from the towed airgun array and the data will be processed on-board the *R/V Langseth* as the survey occurs.

Each proposed surveys (2014 and 2015) will each consist of a 17- to 18-day leg (exclusive of transit and equipment deployment and recovery) comprising approximately 1,700 nautical trackline miles (approximately 3,150 kilometers) of 2-D seismic reflection coverage. The airgun array will operate continuously during the survey with shutdowns only for repairs and marine mammal and sea turtle mitigation. Data will continue to be acquired between line changes. The successive track segments can be surveyed as almost one continuous line. Turns of no greater than 120 degrees will be required to move from one line segment to the next. The 2014 proposed survey design consists primarily of the track lines that run along the periphery of the overall Study Area, including several internal track lines (**Figure 2**). The proposed 2014 survey will occur in water depths ranging between 1,450 meters and 5,400 meters. The 2015 proposed survey consists of additional dip and tie lines. (Dip lines are lines that are perpendicular to the north-south trend of the continental margin. Strike lines are parallel to the margin. Tie lines are any line that connects other lines.) The 2015 survey design may be modified based on the 2014 results.

Along with the airgun operations, two additional acoustical data acquisition systems will be operated during the survey. A Kongsberg EM122 multibeam echosounder (MBES) and a Knudsen Model 3260 Chirp sub-bottom profiler (SBP) will be operated continuously during the seismic operations in order to map the ocean floor. MBES and SBP will not operate during transits at the beginning and end of the survey.

The Langseth has been used to conduct research seismic surveys world-wide since 2008. All of the seismic surveys have been operated under incidental harassment authorizations issued by NMFS. Environmental assessments, IHA's and post-cruise reports environmental impact for most of these cruises cruises can be found on the NMFS Protected Resource website. Many of these reports and applications were prepared by LGL Limited, Environmental Research Associates, under contract to Lamont Doherty Earth Observatory or the USGS.   Because material from earlier documents is owned by the U.S. Government and in the public domain, some material common to these documents may have been used verbatim herein without attribution. The USGS acknowledges role of LGL in preparing material that has been used.

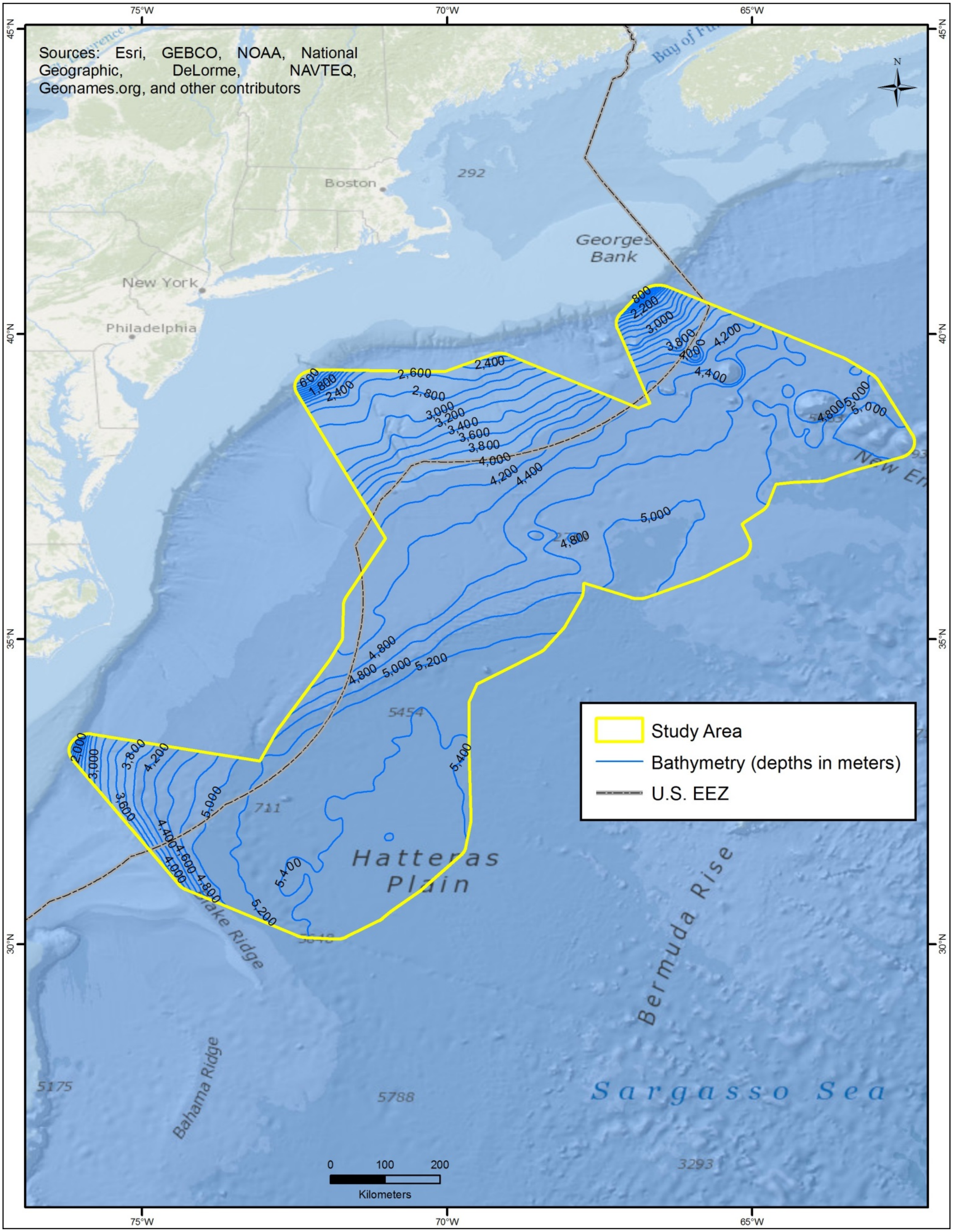


Figure 1 Proposed USGS Study Area

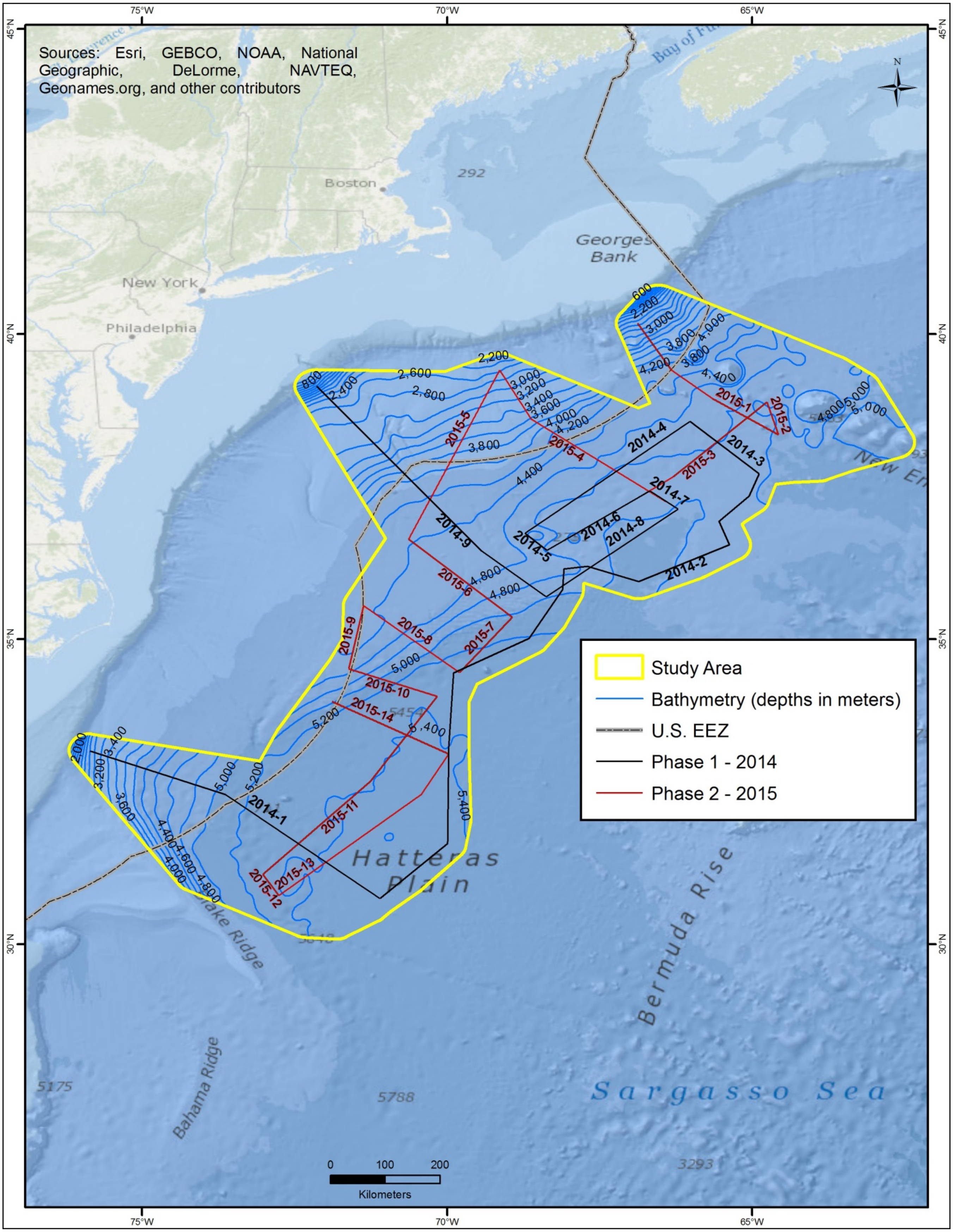


Figure 2 Proposed Seismic Survey Lines, Phases 1 and 2

Vessel Specifications

The *R/V Marcus G. Langseth* will be used as the source vessel; it is owned by the NSF and operated by Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory (L-DEO) of Columbia University. The *R/V Langseth* was designed as a seismic research vessel with a quiet propulsion system to avoid interference with the seismic signals. The operation speed during seismic acquisition is typically 7.8 to 8.3 kilometers per hour (4.2 to 4.5 knots). When not towing seismic survey gear, the *R/V Langseth* can cruise at 20 to 24 kilometers per hour (11 to 12 knots). The *R/V Langseth* was further described in Section 2.2.2.1 of the *Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (EIS)/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (OEIS) for Marine Seismic Research funded by the National Science Foundation or Conducted by the U.S. Geological Survey* (June 2011; referred to herein as the PEIS) and the Record of Decision (June 2012).

Airgun Description

During the proposed 2-D survey, the airgun array to be used will consist of 36 airguns (plus 4 spare airguns), with a total volume of approximately 6,600 cubic inches (in^3). The airgun array and configuration are described and illustrated in the PEIS in Section 2.2.3.1 and on Figure 2.11, respectively. For the 2014 and 2015 proposed survey, the airgun array will be towed at a depth of 9 meters and shot intervals will be 50 meters (approximately 20 to 24 seconds). The firing pressure of the array is 2,000 pounds per square inch.

Predicted Sound Levels

The airgun array that will be used for the USGS East Coast survey is the full 4-string 6,600-in^3 array, which is described and illustrated in the PEIS in Section 2.2.3.1.

Received sound levels have been predicted by L-DEO's model (Diebold et al. 2010, provided as Appendix H of the PEIS) as a function of distance from the airguns, for the 36-airgun array at any tow depth and for a single 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun (i.e., the mitigation gun), which will be used during power-downs. This modeling approach uses ray tracing for the direct wave traveling from the array to the receiver and its associated source ghost (reflection at the air-water interface in the vicinity of the array), in a constant-velocity half-space (infinite homogeneous ocean layer, unbounded by a seafloor). In addition, propagation measurements of pulses from the 36-airgun array at a tow depth of 6 meters have been reported in approximately 1,600 meters water depth (deep water), 50 meters depth (shallow water) and a slope site (intermediate water depth) in the Gulf of Mexico in 2007–2008 (Tolstoy et al. 2009; Diebold et al. 2010), while propagation measurements of pulses from the 18-airgun 2-string array also at a tow depth of 6 meters have been reported for the same shallow and deep sites (Diebold et al. 2010).

For deep water and intermediate water depth cases, these field measurements cannot be used readily to derive mitigation radii because at those sites, the calibration hydrophone was located at a roughly constant depth of 350 to 500 meters, which may not intersect all the sound pressure level (SPL) isopleths at their widest point from the sea surface down to the maximum relevant water depth for marine mammals of approximately 2,000 meters. Figures 2 and 3 in Appendix H of the PEIS show how the values along the maximum SPL line that connects the points where the isopleths attain their maximum width (providing the maximum distance associated with each sound level) may differ from values obtained along a constant depth line. At short ranges, where the direct arrivals dominate and the effects of seafloor interactions are minimal, the data recorded at the deep and slope sites are suited for comparison with modeled levels at the depth of the calibration hydrophone. At larger ranges, the comparison with the mitigation model—constructed from the maximum SPL, through the entire water column at varying distances from the airgun array—is the most relevant. The results are summarized below.

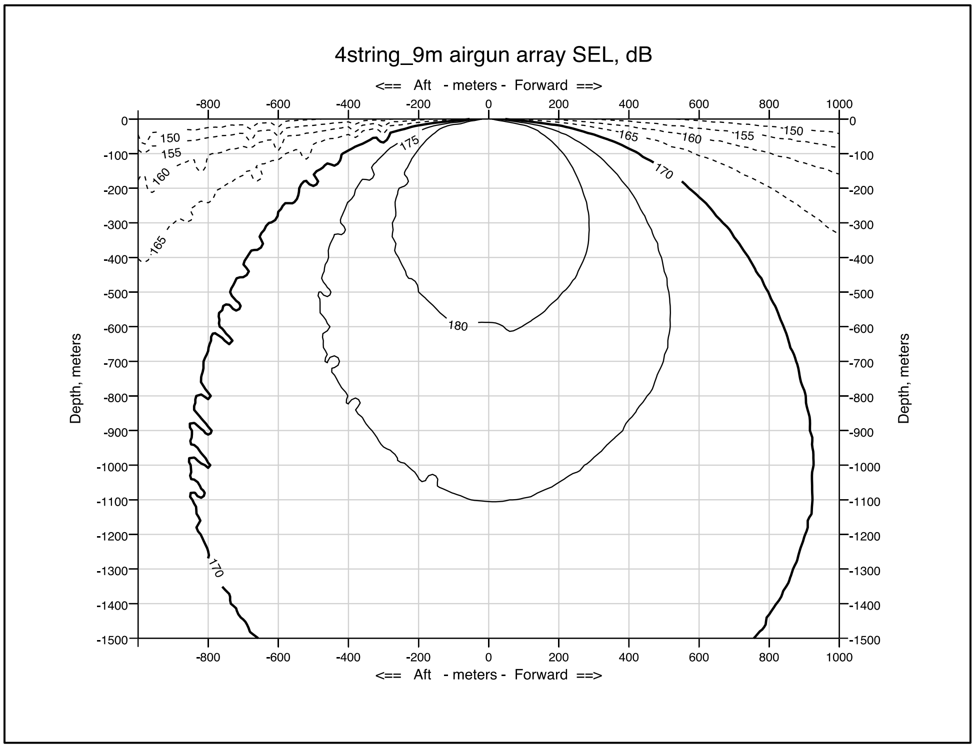
In deep water and intermediate depth water environments, comparisons at short ranges between sound levels for direct arrivals recorded by the calibration hydrophone and model results for the same array tow depth are consistent (Figures 12 and 14 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Consequently, isopleths falling within this domain can be reliably predicted by the L-DEO model, while they may be imperfectly sampled by measurements recorded at a single depth. At larger distances, the calibration data show that seafloor reflected and sub-seafloor refracted arrivals dominate, while the direct arrivals become weak and/or incoherent (Figures 11, 12 and 16 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Aside from local topography effects, the region around the critical distance (approximately 5 kilometers in Figures 11 and 12, and approximately 4 kilometers in Figure 16, in Appendix H of the PEIS) is where the observed levels rise very close to the mitigation model curve. However, the observed sound levels fall almost entirely below the mitigation model curve (Figures 11, 12 and 16 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Thus, analysis of the Gulf of Mexico calibration measurements demonstrates that although simple, the L-DEO model is a robust tool for estimating mitigation radii.

The proposed survey on the East Coast margin will acquire data with the 36-airgun array at a tow depth of 9 meters. The survey will take place entirely in deep water (greater than 1,000 meters). The deep-water radii obtained from 9-meter tow depth L-DEO model results will be used down to a maximum water depth of 2,000 meters (**Figure 3**).

Measurements have not been reported for the single 40-in^3 airgun. The 40-in^3 airgun would be considered under the low-energy sources category in the PEIS. In Section 2.4.2 of the PEIS, Alternative B (the Preferred Alternative) conservatively applies a 100-meter exclusion zone (EZ) for all low-energy acoustic sources in water depths greater than 100 meters. This approach is adopted here for the single Bolt 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun that will be used during power-downs. In addition, L-DEO model results are used to determine the 160- and the 190-decibel (dB) radii for the 40-in^3 airgun in deep water (**Figure 4**).

Table 1 shows the distances at which the 160-dB, 180-dB, and 190-dB root-mean-squared (RMS) sound levels are expected to be received for the 36-airgun array and the single (mitigation) airgun.

The 180-dB re 1 micro (μ) pascal (Pa) $_{RMS}$ distance is the safety criterion as specified by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) (2000) for cetaceans. If marine mammals or sea turtles are detected within or about to enter the appropriate exclusion zone, the airguns would be immediately powered down (or shut down if necessary).



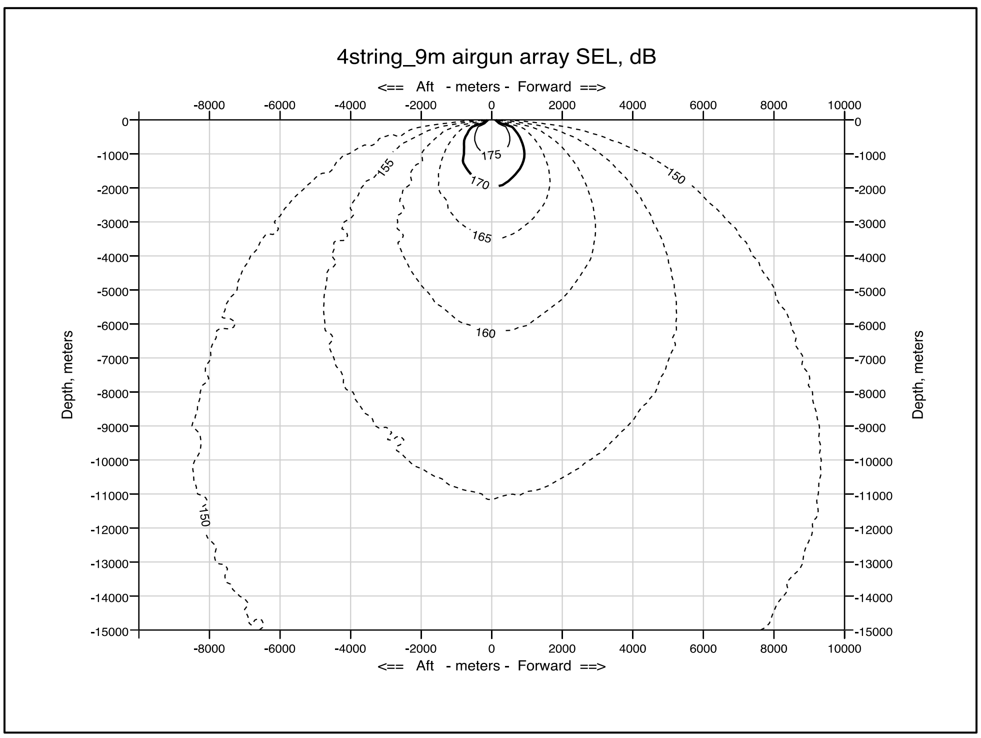
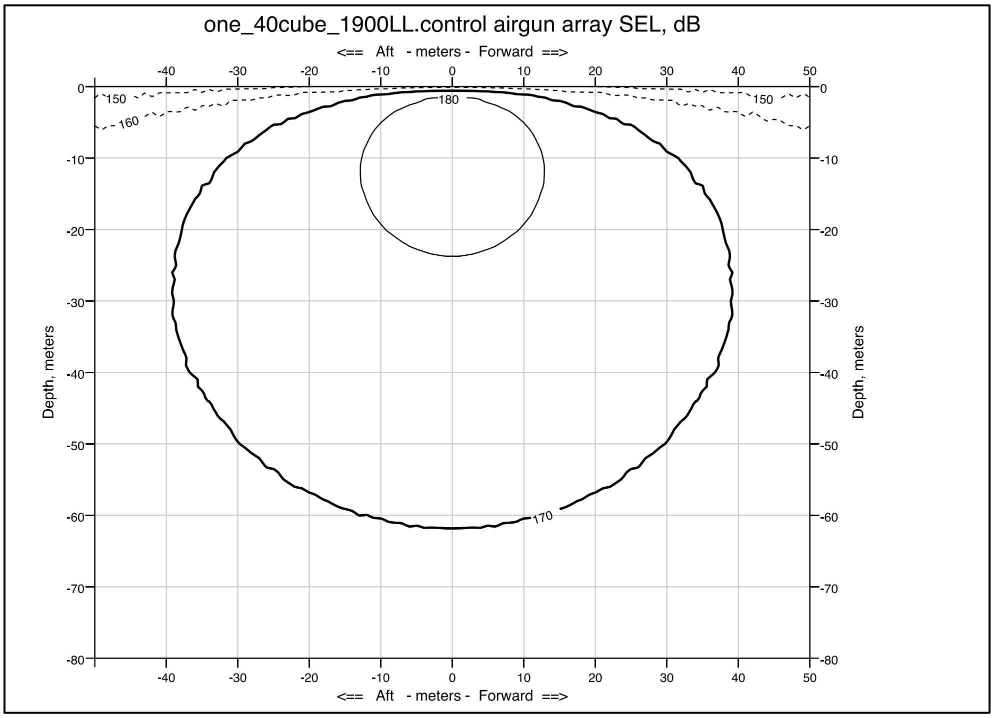


Figure 3 Modeled Deep-Water Received Sound Exposure Levels (SELs) from the 36-Airgun Array Towed at 9 Meters Depth

Modeled deep-water received sound exposure levels (SELs) from the 36-airgun array planned for use during the survey, at a 9-meter tow depth. Received RMS levels (SPLs) are expected to be ~10 dB higher. Plot at the top provides radius to the 170 dB SEL isopleths as a proxy for the 180 dB RMS isopleths and plot at the bottom provides radius to the 150 dB SEL isopleth as a proxy for the 160 dB RMS isopleth.



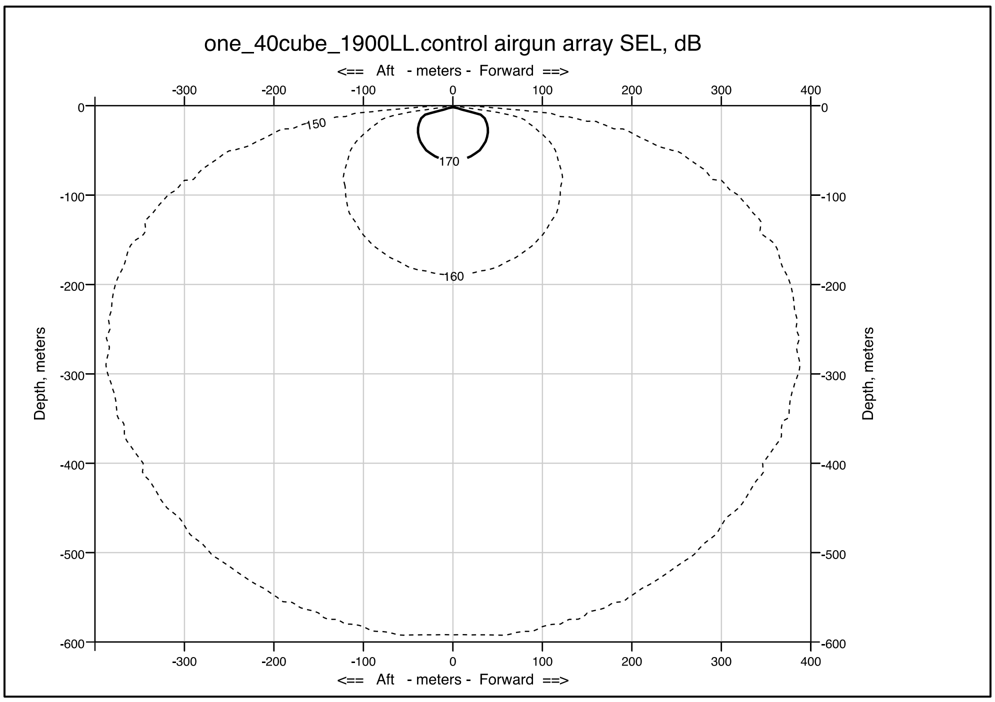


Figure 4 Modeled Deep-Water Received Sound Exposure Levels (SELs) from a Single 40-in^3 Airgun Towed at 9 Meters Depth

Modeled deep-water received SELs from a single 40-in^3 airgun towed at 9 meters depth, which is planned for use as a mitigation gun during the proposed survey. Received RMS levels (SPLs) are expected to be ~10 dB higher. Plot at the top provides radius to the 170 dB SEL isopleths as a proxy for the 180 dB RMS isopleths and plot at the bottom provides radius to the 150 dB SEL isopleth as a proxy for the 160 dB RMS isopleth.

Table 1 Predicted Distances to Sound Levels ≥ 190, 180 and 160 dB re 1 μPa$_{RMS}$

Predicted distances to which sound levels ≥190, 180 and 160 dB re 1 μPa$_{RMS}$ are expected to be received during the proposed survey on the East Coast margin in 2014 and 2015. For the single mitigation airgun, the EZ is the conservative EZ for all low-energy acoustic sources in water depths >100 meter defined in the PEIS.

Source and Volume	Water Depth (meters)	Predicted RMS Radii (meters)		
		190 dB	180 dB	160 dB
Single Bolt airgun, 40 cubic-inch	>1,000	13	100	388
36-gun array totaling 6,600 cubic inches	>1,000	286	927	5,780

Southall et al. (2007) provided detailed recommendations for new science-based noise exposure criteria. Although the NSF is aware that the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) is revising acoustic guidance for marine mammals, at the time of preparation of this Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA) application, NOAA has not issued an official revised version of that policy. As such, this IHA application has been prepared in accordance with the current NOAA acoustic guidance and the procedures are based on best practices noted by Pierson et al. (1998) and Weir and Dolman (2007).

Description of Operations

During the survey, the source vessel, the R/V *Marcus G. Langseth,* will tow a standard 36-airgun array at a depth of 9 meters. The *R/V Langseth* also will tow one 8-kilometer long hydrophone streamer cable. As the airgun array is towed along the survey lines, the hydrophone streamer cable will receive and record the returning acoustic signals from the towed airgun array and the data will be processed on-board the *R/V Langseth* as the survey occurs.

During the 2014 survey, 1,700 nautical track line miles (approximately 3,150 kilometers) of 2-D survey lines will be shot (**Figure 2**). All water depths will be greater than 1,000 meters. Due to the almost continuous nature of the 2014 and 2015 survey track line segments (**Figure 2**), full turns will not be required. Only 90 to 120-degree turns will be conducted with 2-D seismic data being collected continuously during the turns. In addition to the operations of the airgun array during the 2-D survey, a MBES and a SBP also will run continuously. The plan for the 2015 (**Figure 2**) survey is similar in all respects to the 2014.

Multibeam Echosounder and Sub-bottom Profiler

Along with the airgun operations, two additional acoustical data acquisition systems will be operated during the survey. The ocean floor will be mapped with the Kongsberg EM 122 MBES and a Knudsen Chirp 3260 SBP. These sound sources will be operated from the *R/V Langseth* continuously throughout the survey.

The Kongsberg EM 122 MBES operates at 10.5 to 13 (usually 12) kiloHertz (kHz) and is hull-mounted on the *R/V Langseth*. The maximum source level is 242 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS}. The Knudsen Chirp 3260 SBP normally is operated to provide information about the sedimentary features and the bottom topography that is being mapped simultaneously by the MBES. The SBP is capable of reaching water depths of 10,000 meters and penetrating tens of meters into the sediments. The nominal power output is 10 kilowatts (kw), but the actual maximum radiated power is 3 kW or 222 dB re 1 μPa m.

II. DATES, DURATION, AND REGION OF ACTIVITY

The date(s) and duration of such activity and the specific geographical region where it will occur.

The proposed survey area would be bounded by the following geographic coordinates:

40.5694° N / -66.5324° W
38.5808° N / -61.7105° W
29.2456° N / -72.6766° W
33.1752° N / -75.8697° W
39.1583° N / -72.8697° W

The proposed 2014 survey activities will generally occur within the outer portions of the Study Area. The proposed 2015 survey will in-fill more of the Study Area. The track lines proposed for both years occur primarily within International Waters (approximately 80% in 2014 and 90% in 2015, **Figure 2**). Water depths range between approximately 1,450 meters and 5,400 meters; no survey lines will extend to water depths less than 1,000 m. The exact dates of the survey are dependent on logistics and weather conditions; however, the *R/V Langseth* is expected to depart Newark, New Jersey, on August 16, 2014, and transit to the survey area, returning to Norfolk, Virginia, on September 6, 2014. The seismic operations will take approximately 16 days to complete. Approximately one day transit will be required at the beginning and end of the program. The survey schedule is inclusive of weather and other contingency (e.g. equipment failure) time.

The proposed 2015 survey will be virtually identical to the program planned for 2014. Geographic area, duration, and trackline coverage are similar. Exact dates for the survey in 2015 are uncertain, but are scheduled to occur within the April to August time frame.

III. SPECIES AND NUMBERS OF MARINE MAMMALS IN AREA

The species and numbers of marine mammals likely to be found within the activity area.

Thirty-eight marine mammal species could occur within the Study Area. To avoid redundancy and consolidate species-specific information, required information regarding species and numbers of species as is required under Section III, is included below in Section IV

IV. STATUS, DISTRIBUTION, AND SEASONAL DISTRIBUTION OF AFFECTED SPECIES OR STOCKS OF MARINE MAMMALS

A description of the status, distribution, and seasonal distribution (when applicable) of the affected species or stocks of marine mammals likely to be affected by such activities.

Sections III and IV are integrated here to minimize repetition.

Forty-five species of marine mammals, including 30 odontocetes, 7 mysticetes, 7 pinnipeds, and 1 sirenian are known to occur in western North Atlantic Ocean (Waring et al. 2013; Read et al. 2009). Of those 45 species of marine mammals, 34 cetaceans and 4 pinnipeds could be found within the Study Area during the summer months (see **Table 2**). Six of the cetaceans are listed as ***Endangered*** under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) (sei, blue, fin, North Atlantic right, humpback, and sperm whales). Fourteen of the 34 cetacean species, although present in the wider western North Atlantic Ocean, are considered rare in the survey area; however, due to the chance that an individual could be found within the Study Area during the proposed survey, they are discussed in this document. The four pinniped species (harbor seal, harp seal, gray seal, and hooded seal) also are considered rare within the Study Area. All pinnipeds known to occur within the North Atlantic Ocean are considered coastal species and any sightings would be considered extralimital; however, due to the limited chance that they could occur within the Study Area during the summer months, similar to the rare cetacean species, they are discussed in this document.

General information on the taxonomy, ecology, distribution, seasonality and movements, and acoustic capabilities of mysticetes, odontocetes, and pinnipeds are provided in Sections 3.6.1, 3.7.1, and 3.8.1 respectively, of the PEIS. The general distribution of mysticetes, odontocetes, and pinnipeds in the North Atlantic is discussed in Sections 3.6.3.4, 3.7.3.4, and 3.8.3.4, respectively, of the PEIS. In addition, Section 3.1 of the *Atlantic OCS Proposed Geological and Geophysical Activities Mid-Atlantic and South Atlantic Planning Areas Draft Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement* (Bureau of Ocean Energy Management 2012) reviews similar information for all marine mammals that may occur within the Study Area.

The rest of this section deals specifically with their distribution within the Study Area and near the proposed 2014 survey area. Various surveys have been conducted throughout the western North Atlantic, including within sections of the Study Area. The main source of information used here is the Ocean Biogeographic Information System (OBIS) database hosted by Rutgers and Duke Universities (Read et al. 2009). This database includes survey data collected during the Cetaceans and Turtle Assessment Program (CeTAP) conducted between 1978 and 1982 and consisted of both aerial and vessel-based surveys between Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, and the Gulf of Maine. The database also includes survey data collected during the NOAA Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC) and the NOAA Southeast Fisheries Science Center (SEFSC) stock assessment surveys conducted in 2004 (which surveys between Nova Scotia, Canada, and Florida).

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA
ORDER CETACEA								
***Suborder Mysticeti* (Baleen Whales)**								
Fin Whale *(Balaenoptera physalus)*	Regular	Coastal, banks	Canada to North Carolina	Year round	26,500[3] / 3,522	Unable to determine	EN	Depleted
Humpback Whale *(Megaptera novaeangliae)*	Regular	Coastal, banks	Canada to Caribbean	High-latitude summer feeding; low-latitude winter breeding/calving in coastal waters; some remain in high latitudes year round.	11,600[4] / 823[5]	Increasing	EN	Depleted
Minke Whale *(Balaenoptera acutorostrata)*	Regular	Coastal, banks, shelf	Arctic to Caribbean	Spring and Summer – widespread and common occurrence throughout range. Most abundant in New England waters at this time. Fall and Winter – lesser occurrence to largely absent from New England Waters Winter - potential distribution in the Caribbean and south and east of Bermuda	138,000[6] / 20,741	Unable to determine	NL	--
North Atlantic Right Whale *(Eubalaena glacialis)*	Regular	Coastal and shelf waters	Canada to Florida	Spring and Summer – Canada and New England Fall and Winter – migrating along U.S. east cast states and in Southeastern U.S. waters	455 / 455[7]	Increasing	EN	Depleted
Blue Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*)	Rare	Coastal, shelf, and pelagic	Arctic to Florida	Year round	855[8] / 440[7]	Unable to determine[6]	EN	Depleted
Bryde's Whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*)	Rare	Coastal, offshore	N/A	Unknown	N/A	N/A	NL	--

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA
Sei Whale *(Balaenoptera borealis)*	Rare	Mostly pelagic, some offshore	Canada to Massachusetts	Year round	10,300[9] / 357[10]	Unable to determine	EN	Depleted
Suborder Odontoceti (Toothed Whales, Dolphins, and Porpoises)								
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus acutus*)	Regular	Shelf and slope	Central West Greenland to North Carolina	January – May in Georges Bank to Jeffrey's Ledge June – September primarily in Bay of Fundy to George's Bank October - December in Gulf of Maine to George's Bank Year round from Massachusetts to North Carolina	10s–100s of 1000s[11] / 48,819[7]	Unable to determine	NL	--
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin *(Stenella frontalis)*	Regular	Shelf, offshore	Massachusetts to Caribbean	Year round	N/A / 44,715	Unable to determine	NL	--
Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*)	Regular	Coastal, shelf, pelagic	Canada to Florida	Year round	N/A / 77,532[12]	Unable to determine	NL	--
Long-Finned Pilot Whale *(Globicephala melas)*	Regular	Mostly pelagic	Canada to North Carolina	Year round	780,000[13] / 26,535	Unable to determine	NL	--
Short-Finned Pilot Whale *Globicephala macrorhynchus)*	Regular	Mostly pelagic, high relief	North Carolina to Florida	Year round	780,000[13] / 21,515	Unable to determine	NL	--
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*)	Regular	Coastal, shelf and slope	Massachusetts to Florida	Year round	N/A / 3,333	Unable to determine	NL	--

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA
Risso's Dolphin *(Grampus griseus)*	Regular	Shelf, slope, seamounts	Canada to Florida	Spring, summer and Fall in George's Bank to North Carolina Winter in the mid-Atlantic Bight out to oceanic waters	N/A / 18,250	Unable to determine	NL	--
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin *(Delphinus delphis)*	Regular	Shelf, pelagic, high relief	Canada to Georgia	Mid-January – May in George's Bank to North Carolina Mid-summer and Autumn in George's Bank and Scotian shelf	N/A / 173,486	Unable to determine	NL	--
Striped Dolphin *(Stenella coeruleoalba)*	Regular	Offshore convergence zones and upwellings	Canada to Caribbean	Year round	N/A / 54,807	Unable to determine	NL	--
Sperm Whale *(Physeter macrocephalus)*	Regular	Pelagic, slope, canyons	Canada to Caribbean	Winter – concentrated east and northeast of North Carolina Spring – widespread in central portion of the mid-Atlantic Bight and southern George's Bank Summer – widespread in central portion of the mid-Atlantic Bight and east and north of George's Bank Fall – south of New England and throughout the mid-Atlantic Bight	13,190[14] / 2,288	Unable to determine	EN	Depleted
Killer whale *(Orcinus orca)*	Rare	Coastal, pelagic	Arctic to Caribbean	Unknown	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
Clymene Dolphin *(Stenella clymene)*	Rare	Coastal, shelf and slope	North Carolina to Florida	Unknown	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
Spinner Dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*)	Rare	Mainly nearshore	Maine to Caribbean	Year round	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA
Rough-Toothed Dolphin *(Steno bredanensis)*	Rare	Mostly pelagic	Virginia to Florida	Unknown	N/A / 271	Unable to determine	NL	--
Fraser's Dolphin *(Lagenodelphis hosei)*	Rare	Shelf and slope	North Carolina to Florida	Unknown	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
Harbor Porpoise *(Phocoena phocoena)*	Rare	Shelf, coastal, pelagic	Canada to North Carolina	October – December and April – June in Maine through New Jersey January – March in Canada to North Carolina July – September in northern Gulf of Maine and Southern Bay of Fundy	~500,000[15] / 79,833[9]	Unable to determine	NL	--
False Killer Whale *(Pseudorca crassidens)*	Rare	Pelagic	N/A	Unknown	N/A / N/A	N/A	NL	--
Pygmy Killer Whale *(Feresa attenuata)*	Rare	Pelagic	N/A	Unknown	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
Dwarf Sperm Whale *(Kogia sima)*	Rare	Deep waters off shelf	Massachusetts to Florida	Unknown	N/A / 3,785[16]	Unable to determine	NL	--
Pygmy Sperm Whale *(Kogia breviceps)*	Rare	Deep waters off shelf	Massachusetts to Florida	Unknown	N/A / 3,785[16]	Unable to determine	NL	--
Melon-Headed Whale *(Peponocephala electra)*	Rare	Deep waters off shelf	North Carolina to Florida	Year round	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
Sowerby's Beaked Whale *Mesoplodon bidens)*			Canada to Florida	Year round	N/A / 7,092[17]			--
Blainville's Beaked Whale *(Mesoplodon densirostris)*	Rare	Pelagic, deep slope, canyons	Canada to Florida	Year round	N/A / 7,092[17]	Unable to determine	NL	--
Gervais' Beaked Whale *(Mesoplodon europaeus)*			Canada to Florida	Year round	N/A / 7,092[17]			--

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA
True's Beaked Whale *(Mesoplodon mirus)*			Canada to Bahamas	Year round	N/A / 7,092[17]			--
Cuvier's Beaked Whale *(Ziphius cavirostris)*			Canada to Florida	Year round	N/A / 6,532			--
Northern Bottlenose Whale *(Hyperoodon ampullatus)*	Rare	Pelagic	Arctic to New Jersey	Unknown	N/A / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--
ORDER CARNIVORA								
Clade Pinnipedia								
Harbor seal (Phoca vitulina)	Rare	Coastal	Canada to North Carolina	Year round in Canada to Massachusetts September – May in Rhode Island to New Jersey (possibly south to North Carolina)	N/A / 70,142	Unable to determine	NL	--
Gray seal *(Halichoerus grypus)*	Rare	Coastal, pelagic	Canada to North Carolina	Year round in Canada to Massachusetts September – May in Rhode Island to New Jersey (possibly south to North Carolina)	N/A / 348,900	Increasing	NL	--
Harp seal *(Phoca groenlandica)*	Rare	Ice whelpers, pelagic	Canada to New Jersey	Winter – Summer in Arctic Fall as far south as New Jersey	8.6–9.6 million[18] / N/A	Unknown	NL	--
Hooded Seal *(Cystophora cristata)*	Rare	Ice whelpers, pelagic	Canada to Caribbean	January – May in New England Summer and Autumn in Caribbean	600,000[19] / N/A	Unable to determine	NL	--

Table 2 The Habitat, Range, Seasonality, Regional Abundance, and Conservation Status of Marine Mammals that Could Occur In or Near the Study Area

Species	Occurrence Near Study Area	Habitat	Range along U.S. East Coast	Seasonality	Regional/SAR abundance estimates[1]	Population Status[1]	ESA[2]	MMPA

Key:
N/A = Not available or not assessed
Sources:
[1] SAR (stock assessment report) abundance estimates are from the Draft Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports 2013 for the Western North Atlantic Stock unless otherwise noted.
[2] U.S. Endangered Species Act: EN = Endangered; NL = Not listed (ECOS 2013)
[3] Best estimate for the North Atlantic in 2007 (International Whaling Commission [IWC] 2014)
[4] Best estimate for the western North Atlantic in 1992–1993 (IWC 2014)
[5] Minimum estimate for Gulf of Maine Stock (Waring et al. 2013)
[6] Best estimate for the North Atlantic in 2002–2007 (IWC 2014)
[7] Estimate for the Western North Atlantic Stock (Waring et al. 2013)
[8] Estimate for the central and northeast Atlantic in 2001 (Pike et al. 2009)
[9] Estimate for the Northeast Atlantic in 1989 (Cattanach et al. 1993)
[10] Nova Scotia Stock (Waring et al. 2013)
[11] Tens to low hundreds of thousands in the North Atlantic (Reeves et al. 1999)
[12] Western North Atlantic Offshore Stock (Waring et al. 2013)
[13] Estimate for both long- and short-finned pilot whales in the central and eastern North Atlantic in 1989 (IWC 2014)
[14] Estimate for the North Atlantic (Whitehead 2002)
[15] Estimate for the North Atlantic (Jefferson et al. 2008)
[16] This estimate includes both the dwarf and pygmy sperm whales
[17] Estimate includes all *Mesoplodon* in the Atlantic
[18] Northwest Atlantic (Department of Fisheries and Oceans 2012)
[19] Northwest Atlantic (Andersen et al. 2009)

Mysticetes

Fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*)

Fin whales are one of the more common mysticete species found within the Study Area and in the waters surrounding it. According to Palka (2006), they are the most commonly sighted ESA-listed large whale in the western North Atlantic. Hundreds of OBIS sightings of this species near the Study Area boundaries are recorded and 14 sightings within it are recorded. The three most recent sightings were recorded in 2003 and 2004 and were observed during the NEFSC Right Whale Survey. All other sightings are from the 1970s and 1980s.

The NMFS (2010) reports summer feeding grounds mostly between 41°20' and 51°00'N latitude (shore to 1,829 meters). The Study Area and proposed project survey dates coincide with this cycle of the fin whale. Fin whale mating and births occur in the winter (November to March), with reproductive activity peaking in December and January. Hain et al. (1992) suggested that calving takes place during October to January in latitudes of the U.S. Mid-Atlantic region. The proposed 2014 survey period of August–September will not interfere with the reproduction cycle.

Humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*)

Sightings data show that humpback whales traverse coastal waters from the northeastern to the southeastern U.S. They can also be found farther offshore, including the Study Area (Waring et al. 2011). Reports of humpback whale sightings off Delaware Bay and Chesapeake Bay during the winter suggest that the Mid-Atlantic region, including the western portion of the Study Area, may serve as wintering grounds for this species (Swingle et al. 1993; Barco et al. 2002). OBIS logged four sightings of humpback whales within the Study Area. The most recent sighting is from 2006 and was recorded by the NEFSC Right Whale Survey.

Minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*)

The minke whale is among the most widely distributed and most abundant of the baleen whales (Carwardine 1998). The OBIS database reports several sightings of the minke whale along the western edge of the Study Area. The sightings increase toward the northwest, in an area identified as the year-round feeding and mating grounds for the North Atlantic right whale located in the waters off New England. In 1980, OBIS reported three sightings of the minke whale within the Study Area.

North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*)

Research results suggest the existence of six major congregation areas for the North Atlantic right whale: the coastal waters of the southeastern U.S., the Great South Channel, Georges Bank/Gulf of Maine, Cape Cod and Massachusetts Bays, the Bay of Fundy, and the Scotian Shelf (Waring et al. 2011). Movements of individuals within and between these congregation areas are extensive, and data show distant excursions, including into deep water off the continental shelf (Mate, Nieukirk, and Kraus 1997; Baumgartner and Mate 2005). Congregations in U.S. eastern seaboard waters are recorded west of the Study Area; however, movements of the North Atlantic right whale could result in their presence within the Study Area. In addition, year-round feeding and mating grounds exist for the North Atlantic right whale located in the waters off New England. The area overlaps the north section of the Study Area. While the OBIS database makes reference to hundreds of sightings in the vicinity of the Study Area, mainly along the continental shelf, along the western boundary edge of the Study Area, and in the year-round feeding and mating grounds, the OBIS database does not report any sightings within the borders of the Study Area. Overall, the range and seasonal distribution of North Atlantic right whales (particularly males) is not fully understood at this time.

Blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*)

Blue whales are only considered "occasional visitors" within U.S. EEZ waters (Waring et al. 2010). However, this species has been acoustically recorded in the deep offshore waters east of the U.S. EEZ (Clark 1995). The OBIS database reports only one blue whale observation within the Study Area boundary, which was recorded in 1969. Blue whales are considered rare within the Study Area due to the lack of observations within the area, their overall sparse existence within the region, and their preference for the colder waters of Canada (Waring et al. 2013).

Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni/brydei*)

There is no known U.S. management population of Bryde's whale in the U.S. western North Atlantic waters. The seasonal distribution of this whale is not well known (Reilly et al. 2008). The species generally prefers sub-tropical to tropical and warm temperate waters. The northern extent of its range is ~40°N (NOAA Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources [NOAA Fisheries OPR] 2012a). There are no OBIS sightings reported within the Study Area or its surrounding waters. Bryde's whales are considered rare within the waters of the Study Area.

Sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*)

Sei whales are typically associated with steep bathymetric relief, such as the continental shelf break, canyons, or basins situated between banks and ledges where prey is concentrated (Kenney and Winn 1987; Schiling et al. 1992; Best and Lockyer 2002). The range of this highly migratory species includes the continental shelf waters of the northeastern U.S. and extends to south of Newfoundland (Jefferson et al. 2008). Sei whales are not common in U.S. Atlantic waters (NMFS 2012); however, OBIS reports six sightings of the sei whale within the Study Area. The most recent sightings occurred in June 2001 and October 2006, both of which were recorded during the NEFSC Right Whale Survey.

Odontocetes

Atlantic White-sided Dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus acutus)*

The Atlantic white-sided dolphin has thousands of recorded sightings in the OBIS database. The sightings occur in coastal, shelf and slope waters, with the majority occurring on the shelf north of the Study Area. Within the Study Area boundaries, ten sightings of this species are recorded in the OBIS database. Nine of those sightings were from the late 1970s and early 1980s, and one sighting was reported in 2002 during the NEFSC Right Whale Survey.

Atlantic Spotted Dolphin (*Stenella frontalis*)

Within the Study Area, OBIS records indicate that eight Atlantic spotted dolphins have been sighted. The sightings were divided between mid- and base-slope waters. Four were observed in 1998 during the NEFSC survey. The other four were observed in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey.

Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*)

Within the western North Atlantic stock of bottlenose dolphin, at least six genetically distinct stocks are distributed from southern Long Island, New York, to central Florida (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2013a). These are further divided into two morphotypes: coastal and offshore (Waring et al. 2006). Those bottlenose dolphins expected to occur within the Study Area would primarily be from the offshore morphotype. The offshore morphotype is primarily found along the outer continental shelf and continental slope in the western North Atlantic (Waring et al. 2006). OBIS sightings are in the thousands for the bottlenose dolphin in coastal and shelf, slope and abyssal waters. Approximately 100 sightings of this species (likely consisting of the offshore morphotype) in the Study Area have been recorded.

As a note, the bottlenose dolphin population most recently affected by the 2013 Unusual Mortality Event (UME) along the U.S. Mid-Atlantic states was likely primarily that of the coastal morphotype. Due to the preference of the offshore morphotype for deeper continental shelf and slope waters, it is not expected that this population was affected by the UME.

Long-Finned Pilot Whale (*Globicephala melas*)

The long-finned pilot whale is considered uncommon in the mid-Atlantic waters, including the Study Area. While the species prefers deep pelagic waters in temperate and sub-polar climates (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012b), there are only five OBIS sightings of this species within the Study Area boundary. Three of those five sightings occurred in the 1980s. The OBIS database has hundreds of sightings of this species along the shelf and coastal waters of the U.S. and Canada.

Short-Finned Pilot Whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*)

Similar to the long-finned pilot whale, the short-finned pilot whale is considered uncommon in mid-Atlantic waters, including the Study Area. This species also prefers deeper waters; however, it differs from the long-finned pilot whale in that it prefers warmer temperate and tropical waters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012c). While no OBIS sightings of this species within the Study Area are recorded, OBIS has records of 18 sightings of this species, all of which occurred since 2004. The sightings primarily occurred along the continental shelf break.

Pantropical Spotted Dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*)

This species is known to occur over deeper waters (Waring et al. 2009). There are six OBIS sightings of the pantropical spotted dolphin within the Study Area. Three occurred in shelf and slope waters, one in slopes waters, one at the base of the slope, and one in abyssal depths of 5000 meters. The latter was observed in 2005 during the Sargasso 2005 cetacean sightings survey.

Risso's Dolphin (*Grampus griseus*)

The Risso's dolphin is considered common within the Study Area. The OBIS database has over 100 sightings of this species within the boundaries, and thousands along adjacent coastal, shelf and slope waters. Many of the sightings occur in the shelf and slope waters, nine sightings occurred in the deeper waters, in isobaths of 4,400 meters.

Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*)

The short-beaked common dolphin is considered common within the Study Area and surrounding waters. Within the Study Area, the OBIS database reports 83 sightings. Four studies have reported sightings since the year 2000. The NEFSC Right Whale Survey recorded 14 sightings in 2001 and four sightings in 2002. Also in 2001, the Canada Maritime Regional Cetacean Sightings identified one short-beaked common dolphin. Lastly, in 2004 the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey reported observing eight of these species.

Striped Dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*)

The striped dolphin prefers oceanic and deep warm temperate and tropical waters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012d). OBIS records indicate approximately 75 sightings of the striped dolphin within the Study Area, nearly all occurring along the shelf and slope waters in the north and west extent.

Sperm Whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*)

The sperm whale is the most commonly occurring odontocete species within the Study Area and in the adjacent waters. The sperm whale spends summer months in the Mid-Atlantic Bight off the Eastern U.S. coast from Virginia to Massachusetts (Reeves et al. 2002; Palka 2006). Hundreds of OBIS sightings of the sperm whale place them primarily in shelf and slope waters of the northeast U.S. and Nova Scotia. Sperm whales can be found in groups that consist of 20 to 40 animals, including adult females, their calves, and juveniles (Waring et al. 2006). The OBIS also recorded several sightings at abyssal depths of 5,000 meters. Within the Study Area, greater than 300 OBIS sightings of the sperm whale have been recorded, with the majority occurring in the slope waters in the northern and western extent. Sperm whales tend to be found in association with frontal systems, canyon, slope, and seamount features within the region. The survey plan minimizes encroachment of such areas.

Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*)

The killer whale is a very rare species within the western North Atlantic Ocean. There are four recorded sightings of this species within the Study Area. All four sightings occurred during the CeTAP survey. One sighting occurred in 1978, one in 1980, and the remaining two occurred in 1981. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Clymene Dolphin (*Stenella clymene*)

The Clymene dolphin is a rare species within the western North Atlantic Ocean. The species prefers deep, warm temperate, tropical and sub-tropical waters within the Atlantic Ocean (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012e). There are only seven sightings in shelf and slope waters in southern U.S. waters. There are no OBIS sightings for the Clymene dolphin within the Study Area. This species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Spinner Dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*)

The spinner dolphin is a rare species within the western North Atlantic Ocean. The species prefers deep ocean waters within the Atlantic Ocean (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012f). The OBIS database only has one sighting record of the spinner dolphin within the Study Area. The sighting occurred in 1997, during a CeTAP vessel survey. Other sightings in adjacent waters occurred in the slopes west of the Study Area. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Rough-Toothed Dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*)

The rough-toothed dolphin prefers deep ocean warm temperate and tropical waters within the western North Atlantic Ocean. Observations of this species offshore the East Coast of the U.S. are rare (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012g). Within the Study Area, there are two OBIS sightings of the rough-toothed dolphin. One observation occurred near the shelf edge in slope waters during the 1998 NEFSC Survey. The other observation occurred near the base of the slope in 1979 during the CeTAP vessel survey. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Fraser's Dolphin (*Lagenodelphis hosei*)

The Fraser's dolphin prefers deep ocean waters, primarily deeper than 1,000 meters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012h). The overall number of sightings of this species in the western North Atlantic Ocean is low. There are no OBIS sightings of the Fraser's dolphin within the Study Area and only one OBIS sighting in the waters adjacent to its boundaries. This dolphin species was observed near the western boundary of the Study Area and is considered rare within the Study Area.

Harbor Porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*)

The harbor porpoise is primarily a coastal species, preferring waters less than 200 meters deep (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2013b). The OBIS database has records for thousands of sightings of the harbor porpoise in the coastal and shelf waters around the Gulf of Maine. Within the Study Area, only three sightings have been reported. Two observations occurred in the slope waters near the northern extent of the Study Area, and one at abyssal depth of 5,000 meters. The third observation was recorded in 1978 during the Programme Integre de recherches sur les oiseaux pelagiques Northwest Atlantic survey. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

False Killer Whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*)

The false killer whale does not have a U.S.-managed population in the western North Atlantic Ocean, yet the species can be found sparingly offshore of the Mid-Atlantic states, primarily in waters deeper than 1,000 meters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2013c). There are only 11 OBIS sightings of this species off the U.S. coast with two occurring within the Study Area; one was recorded in 1971, with the other two occurring in 1997. The false killer whale is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

Pygmy Killer Whale (*Feresa attenuata*)

The pygmy killer whale is rare within the western North Atlantic Ocean. The species is found primarily in deeper tropical and sub-tropical waters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012i). There is only one OBIS sighting of the pygmy killer whale in the Study Area. It was observed in 1981 during the CeTAP aerial survey. Two other OBIS sightings were recorded along the shelf-waters, near the Study Area. The pygmy killer whale is considered rare with the Study Area.

Pygmy and Dwarf Sperm Whale (*Kogia breviceps and K. sima*)

Both the dwarf and pygmy sperm whale are most commonly found over the continental shelf edge and slope (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012j, 2012k). Considered rare in the Mid-Atlantic region, the pygmy sperm whale has no OBIS-recorded sightings within the Study Area. However, three sightings have been recorded in the slope waters near the Study Area. One sighting was recorded in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey, and the two other sightings were recorded in 1998 during the NEFSC Survey. Similar to the pygmy sperm whale, the dwarf sperm whale is also considered rare in the Mid-Atlantic region, including in the Study Area. There are only two sightings recorded in the OBIS database. One sighting occurred in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey. The other sighting occurred in 1998 during the NEFSC Survey. Both species are considered rare within the Study Area.

Melon-Headed Whale (*Peponocephala electra*)

The melon-headed whale prefers warm, deeper, tropical waters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012l). The melon-headed whale is considered rare within the Study Area and in all adjacent waters. While no OBIS sightings within the Study Area have been recorded, one sighting was recorded near the southeastern extent of its boundary. This sighting occurred during the Sargasso 2005 cetacean sightings survey. This species is considered rare within the Study Area

Sowerby's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon bidens*)

The Sowerby's beaked whale prefers deep, cold temperate waters within the western North Atlantic (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012m). During surveys (both aerial and vessel), the various *Mesoplodon* species are difficult to differentiate. OBIS reports eight sightings of the Sowerby's beaked whale within the Study Area. Six have occurred along the shelf with the other two being in the slope waters. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Blainville's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*)

The Blainville's beaked whale is known to occur in deep, offshore waters spanning from tropical to temperate (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012n). Similar to the Sowerby's beaked whale, the Blainville's beaked whale is difficult to discern from other *Mesoplodon* species during both aerial and vessel surveys. The OBIS data report only one sighting of the Blainville's beaked whale, recorded in 2004 during the NEFSC Mid-Atlantic Marine Mammal Abundance Survey. A second sighting near the northeast extent of the Study Area was logged in 1995 by the NEFSC. The species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Gervais' Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon europaeus*)

The Gervais' beaked whale can primarily be found in deep warm temperate, tropical, and sub-tropical waters (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012o). Similar to the Sowerby's beaked whale, the Gervais' beaked whale is difficult to discern from other *Mesoplodon* species during both aerial and vessel surveys. No OBIS sightings of the Gervais' beaked whale within the Study Area or in any adjacent waters have been recorded. This species is considered rare within the Study Area.

True's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon mirus*)

The True's beaked whale can primarily be found in deeper, warm temperate waters in the western North Atlantic Ocean (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012p). Similar to the Sowerby's beaked whale, the True's beaked whale is difficult to discern from other *Mesoplodon* species during both aerial and vessel surveys. The OBIS database does not have any records for sightings of the True's beaked whale within the Study Area. However, of the 20 OBIS sightings for this species, two exist in the waters adjacent to the northwest boundary line of the Study Area. During the NEFSC 1995 survey, one True's beaked whale was spotted along the shelf edge. In 2003, during the Virginia Aquarium Marine Mammal Strandings 1998-2008, the second was reported stranded near approximately 76°N, 37°W. Survey details do not report on the type of stranding. This species is considered rare within the Study Area.

Cuvier's Beaked Whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*)

The Cuvier's beaked whale in can be found in temperate, tropical, and sub-tropical waters. Primarily, this species prefers deeper pelagic waters, being found in water depths greater than 1,000 meters (NOAA Fisheries OPR, 2012q). Of all the beaked whales, the Cuvier's was the most commonly recorded in the OBIS database. The recorded sightings occurred in the shelf and slope waters adjacent to and within the Study Area. The 15 sightings within the Study Area occurred mostly in the slope waters in the northwest portion. While more common than the other beaked whale species, the Cuvier's beaked whale is considered rare within the Study Area.

Northern Bottlenose Whale (*Hyperoodon ampullatus*)

The northern bottlenose whale is considered extremely uncommon/rare within U.S. western North Atlantic Ocean waters. This species prefers cold, deep waters (greater than 2,000 meters), primarily within the temperate to sub-arctic region (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012r). Only one sighting of this species is in the OBIS database. The observation occurred in 2006 during the NEFSC Right Whale Survey. The northern bottlenose whale is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

Pinnipeds

Harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina*)

The harbor seal is considered rare outside of their coastal habitat in the U.S. western North Atlantic Ocean waters. This species prefers temperate coastal habitats, using rock, reefs, beach, or drifting ice on which to haul out. During summer months, this species can primarily occur in the nearshore waters of the Gulf of Maine and into Canadian waters (Waring et al. 2013). Two aerial sightings of this species were recorded offshore Cape Cod, Massachusetts around the 100-meter isobath. No sightings of harbor seals within or adjacent to the Study Area are recorded in the OBIS database. The harbor seal is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

Gray seal (*Halichoerus grypus*)

The gray seal is considered rare outside of their coastal habitat in the U.S. western North Atlantic Ocean waters. This species prefers cold water coastal habitats, using rocks, sandbars and icebergs to haul out on. During summer months, this species can primarily be found in the nearshore waters of the Gulf of Maine and into Canadian waters (Waring et al. 2013). No sightings of gray seals within or adjacent to the Study Area are recorded in the OBIS database. The gray seal is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

Harp Seal (*Pagophilus groenlandicus*)

The harp seal is considered rare outside its cold water habitat in the North Atlantic, and can be found primarily in the pack ice in the North Atlantic Ocean. During summer months, the harp seal can be found at its Arctic summer feeding grounds. No sightings of harp seals within or adjacent to the Study Area are recorded in the OBIS database. The harp seal is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

Hooded seal (*Cystophora cristata*)

The hooded seal is considered rare outside its cold weather habitat. While this species can be found in deep waters, they are primarily found among pack ice. The species has been observed as far south as the Florida and the Caribbean; however, this is unusual as the species survives best in cold water habitats (NOAA Fisheries OPR 2012s). No sightings of hooded seals within or adjacent to the Study Area are recorded in the OBIS database. The hooded seal is considered rare within the Study Area and adjacent waters.

V. TYPE OF AUTHORIZATION REQUESTED

The type of incidental taking authorization that is being requested (i.e., takes by harassment only, takes by harassment, injury and/or death), and the method of incidental taking.

The USGS requests an IHA pursuant to Section 101(a)(5)(D) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) for incidental take by harassment during its planned seismic surveys in the western North Atlantic Ocean during late August and early September, 2014.

The operations outlined in Section I have the potential to take marine mammals by harassment. Sounds will be generated by the airguns used during the survey, by the echosounder and sub-bottom profiler, and by general vessel operations. "Takes" by harassment potentially could result when marine mammals near the activities are exposed to the pulsed sounds generated by the seismic sources. The effects will depend on the species of cetacean, the behavior of the animals at the time of reception of the stimulus, and received level of the sound (see Section VII). The proposed survey activities may result in disturbance reactions from any marine mammals within proximity to the source vessel. Based on the planned operations and mitigation measures (see Section XI), no serious injury to any marine mammals is expected, and no lethal takes are expected.

VI. NUMBERS OF MARINE MAMMALS THAT COULD BE TAKEN

By age, sex, and reproductive condition (if possible), the number of marine mammals (by species) that may be taken by each type of taking identified in [Section V], and the number of times such takings by each type of taking are likely to occur.

The materials for Sections VI and Section VII are combined and presented in reverse order to minimize duplication among sections.

VII. POTENTIAL IMPACT ON SPECIES OR STOCKS

The anticipated impact of the activity upon the species or stock of marine mammal.

The materials for Section VI and Section VII are combined and presented in reverse order to minimize duplication between sections:

- A summary of potential impacts on marine mammals from airgun operations is presented first, as required for Section VII. A more comprehensive review of the relevant background information is included in the PEIS in Sections 3.6.4.3, 3.7.4.3, and 3.8.4.3, and in Appendix E.
- The estimated numbers of marine mammals that could be affected by the proposed survey in the U.S. ECS region off the Atlantic Seaboard during late August and early September, 2014are presented. This section includes a description of the rationale for the USGS's estimates of the potential numbers of harassment "takes" during the planned survey, as required in Section VI.

Summary of Potential Effects of Airgun Sounds

Airguns have the potential to affect marine mammals in a number of ways, including tolerance, masking (of natural sounds including inter- and intra-specific calls), behavioral disturbance, and physiological responses such as temporary or permanent hearing impairment or other non-auditory effects (Richardson et al.1995; Nowacek et al. 2007; Southall et al. 2007; Wright et al. 2007; Tyack 2009).

Physiological impacts, such as permanent threshold shift (PTS) (which could be considered an injurious event) and temporary threshold shift (TTS) (which is not considered an injurious event) could occur as a result of airgun operations (Southall et al. 2007). However, neither physiological impact is expected to occur during the proposed survey due to use of mitigation measures (described below). While the potential for PTS and TTS cannot be entirely excluded, it is highly unlikely (as summarized in the PEIS in Sections 3.6.7, 3.7.7, and 3.8.7) that this auditory impairment would occur as a result of the proposed 2014 survey. It is also highly unlikely that other non-auditory physiological or physical effects would occur as a result of the proposed survey. It is more likely that, should a marine mammal come within proximity to the proposed survey while the seismic airguns are operating, some behavioral disturbance could occur. However, this disturbance is expected to be short-term and localized. Monitoring and mitigation protocols will reduce any potential impacts to marine mammals. As a result of these protocols, it is anticipated that no marine mammals will be exposed to survey sounds that could cause behavioral disturbance.

Tolerance

Tolerance occurs when animals, often within areas commonly exposed to human-generated noise, do not appear to display a response to these human-generated sounds (Richardson et al. 1995). The pulsed sounds from airguns are known to be detectable in the water up to thousands of kilometers away from the source (Nieukirk et al. 2004). Numerous studies have been conducted on the reaction of marine mammals to seismic airgun pulses. Responses vary as marine mammals have been found to both tolerate the noise and to avoid the noise, indicating that response to noise may be related to individual species. Some studies have reported that marine mammals located a few kilometers from the seismic source have shown no apparent reaction to the noise, while other studies report behavioral reactions such as avoidance in both baleen whales and toothed whales (specifically sperm whales) (Malme et al. 1985; Richardson, Würsig, and Greene 1986; Ljungblad et al. 1988; McCauley et al. 2000a). Although individual baleen and toothed whales, as well as (less frequently) pinnipeds, have shown to exhibit behavioral reactions to airgun pulses at certain times, at other times, all three types of marine mammals have exhibited no obvious response. The relative responses of individual baleen whales, toothed whales, and pinnipeds are expected to be quite variable and depend on factors such as species, age, and previous exposures of the animal to human-generated sound.

Masking

Masking occurs when human-generated sounds interfere or obscure the ability of a marine mammal to detect sound signals they would otherwise receive (Richardson et al. 1995). The number of studies specific to the masking effects of pulsed sounds on marine mammal calls is limited. It is expected that those marine mammal species that could potentially be affected by masking may still be able to receive and emit sounds during the relatively quiet periods between the airgun pulses (Simard 2005; Clark and Gagnon 2006). Some baleen whales have been reported to cease calling due to the presence of pulsed sounds; however, other studies have reported that some baleen have increased the consistency of calls to compensate for presence of pulsed sounds (Clark and Gagnon 2006; Di Iorio and Clark 2010). Other studies have reported that whales have continued calling in the presence of seismic activity (Nieukirk et al. 2004; Richardson et al. 1986; Madsen et al. 2002). Small odontocetes predominantly rely on sounds within the higher frequencies. These frequencies are much higher than the dominant frequencies produced by seismic airguns, thereby limiting the potential for masking related to these species. Due to the intermittent nature of seismic airgun pulses, the relatively short timeframe of the proposed 2014 survey, and the large area to be covered during the proposed 2014 survey (reducing repeated seismic pulses within a small area as is common of seismic surveys), it is expected that masking effect from the seismic pulses will be minor.

Disturbance Reactions

Disturbance effects can be expressed in a variety of ways including both obvious and more subtle reactions. These behavioral disturbance reactions can include (but are not limited to) flight response, changes in diving patters, foraging, and breathing, and avoidance or displacement (Tyack 2009; Nowacek et al. 2007). Temporary exposure and the potential brief reactions to that exposure are not expected to result in any significant disruption to behavioral patterns and will not result in harassment or “taking” (NMFS 2001; National Research Council 2005; Southall et al. 2007). The proposed 2014 survey is not expected to result in any permanent effects to any individuals or populations.

Reactions to sound, if any, depend on the species, state of maturity, experience, current activity, reproductive state, time of day, and many other factors (Richardson et al. 1995; Wartzok et al. 2004; Southall et al. 2007; Weilgart 2007). If a marine mammal reacts to an underwater sound by changing its behavior or moving a small distance, the impacts of the change are unlikely to be significant to the individual, let alone the stock or population. However, if a sound source displaces marine mammals from an important feeding or breeding area for a prolonged period, impacts on individuals and populations could be significant (Lusseau and Bejder 2007; Weilgart 2007). Currently, the majority of research and information regarding effects of seismic surveys is focused on individual animals and little information exists regarding effects at the population or community level.

Given the many uncertainties in predicting the quantity and types of impacts of sound on marine mammals, it is common practice to estimate how many mammals would be present within a particular distance of human activities and/or exposed to a particular level of anthropogenic sound. In most cases, this approach likely overestimates the numbers of marine mammals that would be affected in some biologically important manner. One of the reasons for this is that the selected distances/isopleths are based on limited studies indicating that some animals exhibited short-term reactions at that specific distance or sound level. The exposure calculations then assume that all animals exposed to this level would react in a biologically significant manner, similar to the few species that were observed exhibiting a reaction at that time.

The sound criteria used to estimate how many marine mammals might be disturbed to some biologically significant degree by seismic survey activities are primarily based on behavioral observations of a few species. Detailed studies have been done on humpback, gray, bowhead, and sperm whales, and on ringed seals. Less detailed data are available for some other species of baleen whales and small-toothed whales, but for many species there are no data on responses to marine seismic surveys.

Baleen whales. Baleen whales generally tend to avoid operating airguns, but avoidance radii are quite variable. Whales often are reported to show no overt reactions to pulses from large arrays of airguns at distances beyond a few kilometers, even though the airgun pulses remain well above ambient noise levels out to much longer distances. However, baleen whales exposed to strong noise pulses from airguns often react by deviating from their normal migration route and/or interrupting their feeding and moving away. Overall, the largest avoidance radii recorded (20 to 30 kilometers) for a reaction to seismic airguns involved migrating bowhead whales (Miller et al. 1999; Richardson et al. 1995). In the cases of migrating gray and bowhead whales, the observed changes in behavior appeared to be of little or no biological consequence to the animals, they simply avoided the sound source by displacing their migration route to varying degrees, still within the natural boundaries of the migration corridors (Malme et al. 1984; Malme and Miles 1985; Richardson et al. 1995).

Responses of *humpback whales* to seismic surveys have been studied during migration, on summer feeding grounds, and on Angolan winter breeding grounds; there also has been discussion of effects on the Brazilian wintering grounds. During full-scale seismic surveys off Western Australia, avoidance reactions were reported to begin at 5 to 8 kilometers away from the full airgun array and 2 kilometers away from the single airgun. Traveling pods of humpback whales generally remained approximately 3 to 4 kilometers away from the active survey, and more sensitive resting pods of cow-calf pairs maintained an avoidance distance of 7 to 12 kilometers. However, some individual humpback whales, especially males, approached within distances of 100 to 400 meters (McCauley et al. 1998, 2000b).

On summer feeding grounds in southeast Alaska, humpback whales did not exhibit persistent avoidance when exposed to seismic pulses, although some humpback whales did exhibit a “startle” response (Malme et al. 1985). It has been suggested that South Atlantic humpback whales wintering off Brazil may be displaced or even may strand upon exposure to seismic surveys; however, these data were more circumstantial and subject to other explanations (International Association of Geophysical Contractors 2004). Data from subsequent years indicated that no observable direct correlation between strandings and seismic surveys existed.

Currently, there are no data on reactions of *right whales* to seismic surveys. However, results from studies conducted of the closely related *bowhead whale* indicate that responses of this whale can be variable, depending on their activity (migrating vs. feeding). While at summer feeding grounds, bowhead whales showed no reactions to seismic surveys being conducted between 6 and 99 kilometers away (Richardson et al. 1986). More recent studies also indicate that feeding bowhead whales are more tolerant of higher sound levels. Migrating bowhead whales, on the other hand, appear to be more sensitive and responsive to pulsed seismic sounds. Bowhead whale migrating in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea generally show substantial avoidance of seismic surveys (Miller et al. 1999; Richardson et al. 1995).

Reactions of feeding and migrating (not wintering) *gray whales* to seismic sounds also have been studied. In the Bering Sea (off St. Lawrence Island), 50 percent of feeding gray whales were reported to have stopped feeding at received sound pressure levels of 173 dB re 1 µPa on an (approximate) RMS basis, and that 10 percent of feeding whales interrupted feeding at received levels of 163 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS} (Malme et al. 1986, 1988). These findings were generally consistent with the results of studies conducted on larger numbers of gray whales migrating off California and western Pacific gray whales feeding off Sakhalin, Russia.

Studies have not been conducted on other *Balaenoptera* species (i.e., blue, sei, fin, and minke whales); however, these species occasionally have been observed in ensonified areas during various seismic surveys. Observations made during seismic surveys off the United Kingdom between 1997 and 2000 indicate that mysticetes (mainly fin and sei whales) were sighted at a similar rate while large seismic arrays were operating and while they were silent (Stone 2003; Stone and Tasker 2006). Localized avoidance also was observed during this time. Fin/sei whales also have been reported to spend less time submerged during periods when seismic arrays were firing compared to times when silent.

Data on short-term reactions by cetaceans to impulsive noises are not necessarily indicative of long-term or biologically significant effects. Whether impulsive sounds affect reproductive rate or distribution and habitat use in subsequent days or years is unknown. However, gray whales have continued to migrate annually along the west coast of North America with substantial increases in the population over recent years, despite intermittent seismic exploration (and much ship traffic) in that area for decades. The western Pacific gray whale population did not seem affected by a seismic survey in its feeding ground during a previous year. Bowhead whales have continued to travel to the eastern Beaufort Sea each summer, and their numbers have increased notably

Toothed whales. Little systematic information is available about reactions of toothed whales to sound pulses. However, there are recent systematic studies on sperm whales (i.e., Gordon et al. 2006; Madsen et al. 2006). There is also an increasing amount of information about responses of various odontocetes to seismic surveys based on monitoring studies (i.e., Stone 2003; Smultea et al. 2004; Stone and Tasker 2006). Seismic operators and marine mammal observers on seismic vessels regularly see dolphins and other small-toothed whales near operating airgun arrays but, in general, there is a tendency for most delphinids to show some avoidance of operating seismic vessels (Richardson et al. 2009; Barkaszi, Epperson, and Bennett 2009). In most cases, the avoidance radii for delphinids appear to be small, on the order of 1 kilometer or less, and some individuals show no apparent avoidance. Based on observations from active seismic surveys off the United Kingdom, small odontocetes exhibited greater avoidance to operating airguns than previously reported (Stone et al. 2003; Gordon et al. 2004; Stone and Tasker 2006). The observer data also indicated that small odontocetes were feeding less and were interacting with the vessel less during activity seismic surveys. Captive bottlenose dolphins (and beluga whales) exhibited changes in behavior when exposed to strong, pulsed sounds similar in duration to those typically used in seismic surveys (Finneran et al. 2000, 2002, 2005). However, overall, the animals tolerated high, received levels of sound before exhibiting aversive behaviors. Porpoises, like delphinids, show variable reactions to seismic operations, and reactions apparently depend on species. Harbor porpoises have been reported to show stronger avoidance to seismic operations than Dall's porpoises (Stone 2003; MacLean and Koski 2005; Bain and Williams 2006).

Studies of all three species of sperm whale reported that they show avoidance reactions in general to vessels not operating seismic airguns (Richardson et al. 1995; Würsig et al. 1998; Baird 2005). In studies where sperm whales were exposed to seismic airguns, the species response indicates considerable tolerance to the airgun noise. The whales generally do not show strong avoidance, and they continue to call. Research does indicate; however, that diving and foraging behaviors can be altered upon exposure to airgun sound (Jochens et al. 2008; Miller et al. 2009; Tyack 2009). Specific data on the behavioral reactions of *beaked whales* to seismic surveys is almost non-existent; the majority of information regarding beaked whales is in connection with military sonar events. Most beaked whales are illusive and tend to avoid approaching vessels of other types (Würsig et al. 1998). The species may dive for an extended period when approached by a vessel. However, based on both visual and acoustic observations, some northern bottlenose whales remained in the general area and continued to produce high-frequency clicks when exposed to sound pulses from distant seismic surveys. Most beaked whales would likely show strong avoidance of an approaching seismic vessel, as they would with any other vessel, although this has not been specifically documented.

Overall, odontocete reactions to large arrays of airguns are variable and, at least for delphinids, seem to be confined to a smaller radius than has been observed for the more responsive of the mysticetes and some other odontocetes. Based on available data, ≥170 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS} disturbance criterion (rather than ≥160 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS}) would be appropriate for delphinids. This is based on reaction distances for delphinids being more consistent with the 170 dB re 1 μPa$_{RMS}$ radius, and delphinids being less responsive than other more responsive cetaceans.

Pinnipeds. Information on the reactions of pinniped species to pulsed seismic airgun sounds is limited. Based on early observations, pinnipeds appear to be quite tolerant of pulsed sounds. Other reports indicate that pinnipeds were tolerant of loud, pulsed sounds when they were strongly attracted to an area for feeding or reproductive purposes (Mate and Harvey 1987; Reeves et al. 1996). In more recent studies, avoidance of pinnipeds during seismic surveys has been reported as being relatively small, within 100 to a few hundred meters. Many seals remained within 100 to 200 meters of the survey track lines while an operating seismic survey passed (Moulton and Lawson 2002). Other observations made during seismic surveys in the Chuckchi and Beaufort Seas reported that pinnipeds were observed less when the seismic airguns were operating than when they were silent (Miller et al. 2005). Overall, behavioral reactions from pinnipeds to pulsed seismic sounds are variable. It is expected that localized avoidance of operating seismic airguns may occur; however, it cannot be guaranteed that these species would fully avoid an operating seismic vessel during active surveys.

Hearing Impairment and other Physical Effects

Temporary or permanent hearing impairment is a possibility when marine mammals are exposed to very strong sounds. TTS has been demonstrated and studied in certain captive odontocetes and pinnipeds exposed to strong sounds (Southall et al. 2007). However, neither specific occurrences of TTS nor permanent hearing damage (i.e., PTS, in free-ranging marine mammals exposed to sequences of airgun pulses during realistic field conditions) have been documented. Current NMFS policy regarding exposure of marine mammals to high-level sounds is that cetaceans and pinnipeds should not be exposed to impulsive sounds with received levels ≥180 dB and 190 dB re 1 μPa$_{RMS}$, respectively (NMFS 2000). These criteria have been used in establishing the exclusion (shutdown) zones planned for the proposed seismic survey. However, those criteria were established before any information about minimum received levels of sounds necessary to cause auditory impairment in marine mammals existed.

Recommendations for science-based noise exposure criteria for marine mammals, frequency weighting procedures, and related matters were published by Southall et al. (2007). Those recommendations have not, as of late 2013, been formally adopted by the NMFS for use in regulatory processes and during mitigation programs associated with seismic surveys. However, some aspects of the recommendations have been considered in certain EISs and small take authorizations under the MMPA. The NMFS has indicated that they may soon issue new noise exposure criteria for marine mammals that account for the now-available scientific data on TTS, the expected offset between the TTS and PTS thresholds, differences in the acoustic frequencies to which different marine mammal groups are sensitive, and other relevant factors.

The planned monitoring and mitigation measures for this project are designed to detect marine mammals occurring near the airgun array and to avoid exposing them to sound pulses that have the potential, to cause hearing impairment (see Sections XI and XIII). Also, many cetaceans and (to a limited degree) pinnipeds show some avoidance of the area where received levels of airgun sounds are high enough such that hearing impairment could potentially occur. In those cases, the avoidance responses of the animals themselves would reduce or (most likely) avoid any possibility of hearing impairment. Appendix E of the PEIS provides a thorough review of the current knowledge available regarding TTS, PTS, and strandings and mortalities for marine mammals and seismic surveys.

Non-auditory physical effects may also occur in marine mammals exposed to strong underwater, pulsed sound. These non-auditory physiological effects or injuries could include stress, neurological effects, gas bubble formation in the blood or tissues, and other types of organ or tissue damage. It is possible that some marine mammal species (i.e., beaked whales) may be especially susceptible to injury and/or stranding when exposed to strong pulsed sounds. This is likely due to the deep-diving behavior of these species, which could result in a situation similar to "the bends" in humans if the animals are disturbed at depth and rise too quickly to the surface. However, no specific evidence exists regarding the potential for non-auditory effects to occur as a result of seismic surveys. Any effects resulting from the proposed seismic survey are expected to be limited to behavioral avoidance of the seismic vessel, as this reaction appears the most common among most baleen whales, some toothed whales, and some pinnipeds. Therefore, those animals avoiding the seismic survey vessel would be even less likely to incur auditory or non-auditory physical effects. The planned monitoring and mitigation, along with the brief duration of exposure expected, and the deep water environment of the Study Area, would all further reduce the potential for marine mammals to be exposed to pulsed sounds strong enough to cause non-auditory physical effects.

Potential Effects of Multibeam Echosounder and Sub-bottom Profiler Signals

The PEIS included a comprehensive review of potential affects from both MBESs and SBPs (see Sections 3.6.4.3; 3.7.4.3; 3.8.4.3; and Appendix E). The PEIS concluded that the operation of MBESs and SBPs is unlikely to impact odontocetes, mysticetes, or pinnipeds because the intermittent and narrow, downward-directed nature of both acoustic sources would result in no more than one or two brief pinging exposures of any individual animal, due to the movement and speed of the survey vessel.

Number of Marine Mammals that could be Exposed to 160 dB re 1µPA$_{\text{RMS}}$

All anticipated takes would be "takes by harassment" of small numbers of marine mammals and are expected to involve only temporary changes in behavior. No injury is expected to result from the proposed 2014 survey due to the proposed mitigation measures discussed below in Section XI. The methods used to estimate the number of marine mammals that could be affected during the proposed survey are described below. In general, the estimates are based on the consideration of the number of marine mammals that could be disturbed by the sounds resulting from the 36-airgun array during the approximately 3,150 kilometers of proposed 2014 survey lines in the U.S. ECS region of the Atlantic seaboard. The sources of data used to determine the "take" estimates are described below.

It is assumed that the airgun array and other sound sources (i.e., MBESs and SBPs) will be operated simultaneously. Therefore, any marine mammal close enough to be affected by an MBES or an SBP would already be affected by the airguns. However, even if the airguns are not operating simultaneously with the other sound sources, as stated earlier, marine mammals are not expected to exhibit anything more than short-term and negligible responses to the MBES and the SBP given the characteristics of the sound (i.e., narrow-downward directed beam) and other considerations as described in Sections 3.6.4.3; 3.7.4.3, 3.8.4.3, and Appendix E of the PEIS. Such reactions, as those expected from an MBES and an SBP alone are not considered to constitute a "taking" (NMFS 2001). Therefore, the "take" estimates described below do not take into account any additional allowance to include any marine mammals that could be affected by sound sources other than airguns.

Basis for Estimating Exposure

Incidental takes were estimated for each species by estimating the likelihood of a marine mammal being present within the expected ensonified area during active 2-D seismic surveys. Expected marine mammal presence in the vicinity of the Study Area during the proposed summer 2014 survey are described in Section IV. Based on the location of the Study Area and the time of year of the proposed 2014 survey, up to 38 marine mammal species have the potential to occur somewhere within the Study Area. Potential exposure is estimated based on the estimated density (animals per unit area) of each species within the Study Area and the amount of area estimated to be within the 160 dB re 1µPa_{RMS} ensonified radius of the 36-airgun array (**Table 1**; **Figure 5**). The estimated 160 dB re 1µPa_{RMS} ensonified zone was determined as described in Section I.

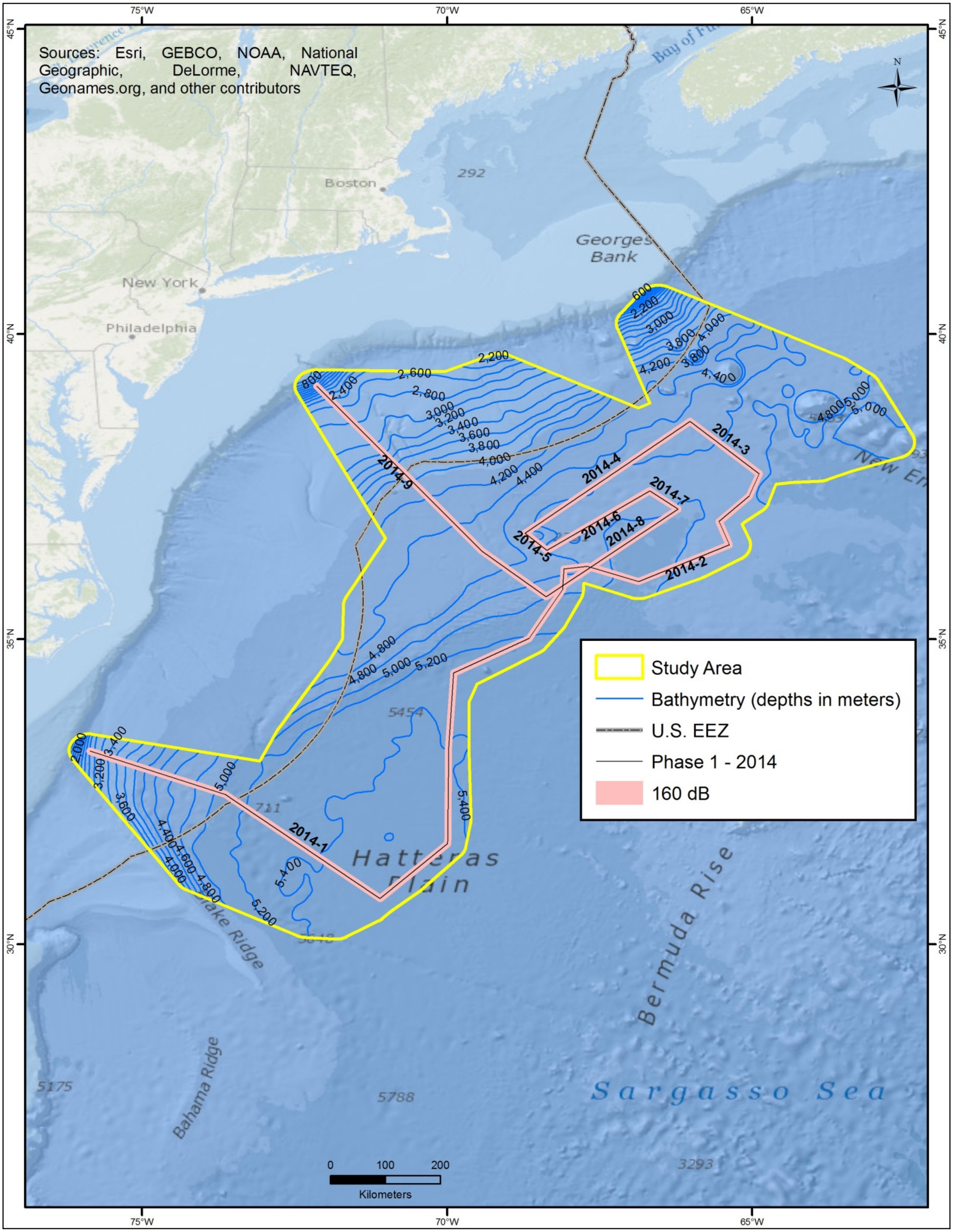


Figure 5 Proposed 2014 Survey – Ensonified Buffer

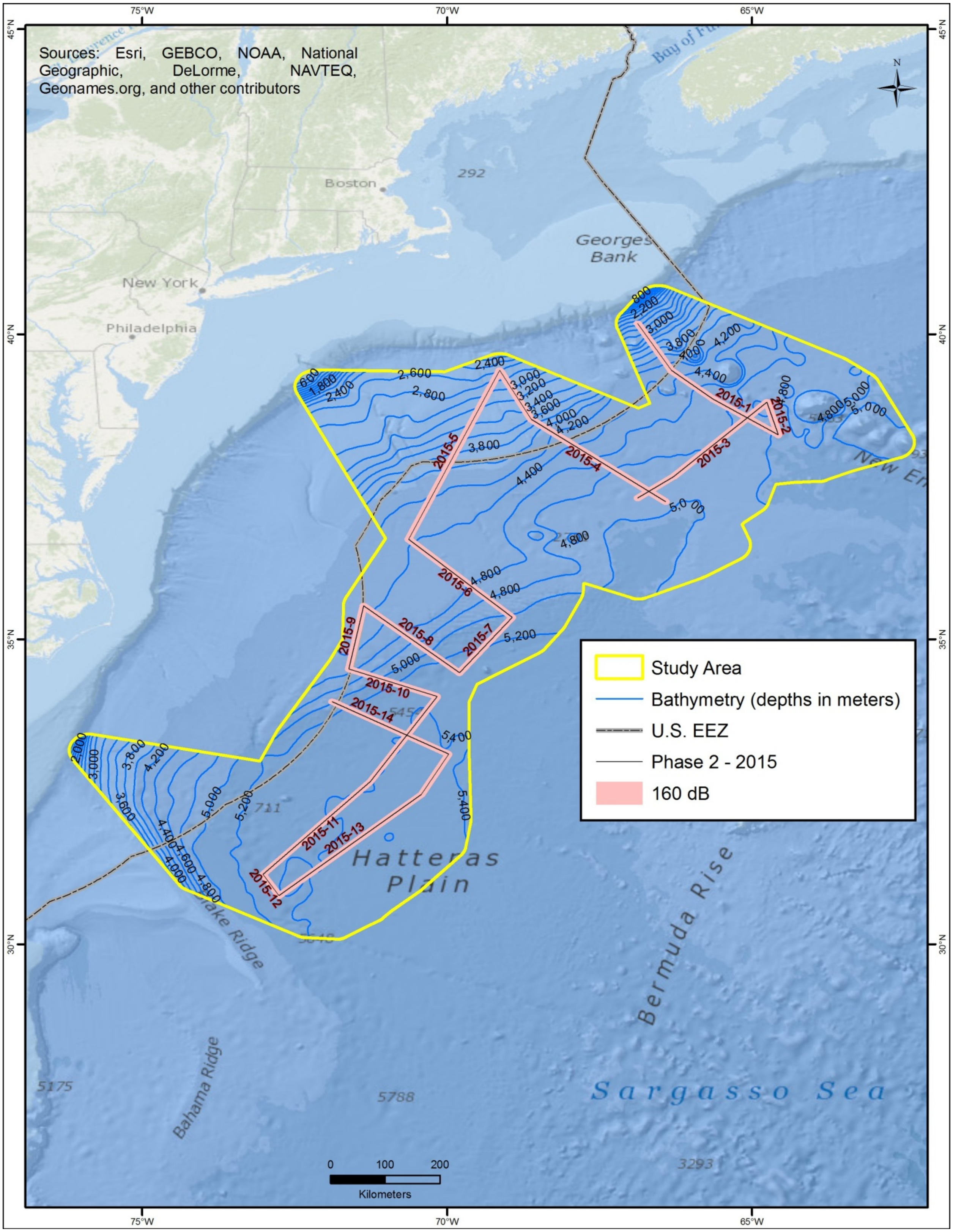


Figure 6 Proposed 2015 Survey – Ensonified Buffer

Density estimates for marine mammals within the vicinity of the Study Area are limited. Density data for species found along the East Coast of the U.S. generally extend slightly outside of the U.S. EEZ. The Study Area, however, extends well beyond the U.S. EEZ, and is well off the continental shelf break. The survey lines for the proposed 2014 survey are located in the far eastern portion of the Study Area, primarily within the area where little to no density data are currently available. It was determined that the best available information for density data (for those species where density data existed) of species located off the U.S. East Coast was housed at the Strategic Environmental and Development Program (SERDP) / National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) / NOAA Marine Animal Model Mapper and OBIS-SEAMAP database. Within this database, the model outputs of all four seasons from the U.S. Department of the Navy Operating Area (OPAREA) Density Estimates (NODE) for the Northeast OPAREA and Southeast OPAREA (Department of the Navy 2007a, 2007b) were used to determine the mean density (animals per square kilometer) for 19 of the 38 marine mammals with the potential to occur within the Study Area. Those species include fin whale, minke whale, Atlantic spotted dolphin, bottlenose dolphin, long-finned and short-finned pilot whale, Pantropical spotted dolphin, Risso's dolphin, Short-beaked common dolphin, striped dolphin, sperm whale, rough-toothed dolphin, dwarf and pygmy sperm whale, and Sowerby's, Blainville's, Gervais', True's, and Cuvier's beaked whales. Model outputs for each season are available in the database. The data from the NODE summer density models, which include the months of June, July, and August, were used as the 2014 survey is proposed to take place between late August and early September. Of the seasonal NODE density models available, it is expected that the summer models are the most accurate and robust as the survey data used to create all of the models were obtained during summer months. The models for the winter, spring, and fall are derived from the data collected during the summer surveys, and therefore are expected to be less representative of actual species density during those seasons.

It should be noted that the mean density for those species was calculated based on the area within the Study Area where density data existed. The outer portion of the Study Area, where the majority of the proposed 2014 survey lines are located, was classified as "no data" in the database. Therefore, the density estimates that were used are based on species density for a portion of the Study Area. Due to the lack of more comprehensive and available data, the NODES data have been determined to be the best available data for that area. The density data likely do not extend out to the eastern portion of the Study Area as marine mammal surveys generally do not occur this far offshore. Therefore, there is a general lack of information in this region.

For those species that did not have density model outputs within the SERDP/NASA/NOAA and OBIS-SEAMAP database, or those species with density outputs that did not extend into the Study Area at all (i.e., all four pinniped species, or the sei whale), but for which OBIS sightings data within or adjacent to the Study Area exists, a *Requested Take Authorization* for the mean group size of the species is included. Mean group sizes were determined based on data reported from the CeTAP surveys (CeTAP 1982).

The estimated numbers of animals potentially exposed to sound during the proposed 2014 survey were determined using the 160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ threshold criterion for all cetaceans and pinnipeds. It is assumed that any marine mammals that are exposed to airgun sounds within this threshold could change their behavior sufficiently to be considered "taken by harassment." Table 3 shows the density estimates for each species as described above and the estimated numbers of individual marine mammals that could be exposed to ≥160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ during the active 2-D seismic survey. This estimate assumes that the individual animals do not move away from the seismic survey vessel, therefore, resulting in exposure. As stated earlier, for species for which densities were unavailable, but for which OBIS sightings within or adjacent to the Study Area exist, a *Requested Take Authorization* for the mean group size of the species is included.

It should be noted, that unlike previous USGS, NSF, and L-DEO seismic surveys aboard the *R/V Langseth*, the proposed survey will be conducted as essentially one continuous line. The survey will not be conducted in a pattern of parallel lines and will not include full turns of the vessel. Therefore, the ensonified area for the proposed survey does not include a contingency factor (typically 25%) in line-kilometers. The proposed survey also is not expected to shut down the airguns, only to power-down the airguns, should a marine mammal enter within the 160 dB re $1 \mu Pa_{RMS}$ EZ. Given this, the ensonified area for the single mitigation gun would be much smaller than that of the full array (see Table 1). Therefore, the use of the full 160 dB re $1 \mu Pa_{RMS}$ ensonified area for the entire 3,150 kilometers of survey lines is expected to overestimate of the actual ensonified area should the single mitigation airgun need to be used at any time. It is assumed that the estimates of the numbers of individual marine mammals that could be exposed to sounds at 160 dB re $1 \mu Pa_{RMS}$ are overall precautionary due to the overestimated ensonified area and the estimation of species presence within the large Study Area, and are likely to overestimate the actual number of marine mammals that could be exposed. These estimates assume that there would be no weather, equipment, or mitigation delays, which is highly unlikely.

Note that although the survey track is continuous through the turns and no mitigation gun will be necessary. However, the mitigation airgun may be used in the event of minor, short duration equipment maintenance. Longer maintenance or repair periods (greater than two hours) of the seismic equipment would warrant complete shut-down of the seismic source, including the mitigation gun. The normal ramp-up procedures would be followed at the completion of these longer shut-down periods.

Table 3: Densities and Estimates of Possible Numbers of Individuals That Could be Exposed to 160 dB re 1 μPA_{RMS} During Each of Proposed Summer (June, July, August) 2014 and 2015 2-D Seismic Surveys

Species	Mean Density (#/km^2)[a]	Ensonified Area (km^2)	Calculated Take[b]	% of Regional Population[c]	Requested Level B Take Authorization
Mysticetes					
Fin Whale	0.0000610	36,600	3	0.0113	3
Humpback Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0259	3[d]
Minke Whale	0.0000360	36,600	2	0.0014	2
North Atlantic Right Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.6593	3[d]
Blue Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.2339	2[d]
Bryde's Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	3[d]
Sei Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0291	3[d]
Odontocetes					
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	0.1106	54[d]
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin	0.0288400	36,600	1056	2.3616	1056
Bottlenose Dolphin	0.0066470	36,600	244	0.3147	244
Long-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0190400	36,600	697	0.0894	697
Short-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0190400	36,600	697	0.0894	697
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin	0.0197600	36,600	724	21.7222	724
Risso's Dolphin	0.0093180	36,600	342	1.8740	342
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin	0.0055320	36,600	203	0.1170	203
Striped Dolphin	0.1343000	36,600	4,916	8.9697	4,916
Sperm Whale	0.0022510	36,600	83	0.6293	83
Killer whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	7[d]
Clymene Dolphin	0.0093110	36,600	0	N/A	346
Spinner Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	65[d]
Rough-Toothed Dolphin	0.0004260	36,600	16	5.5351	16
Fraser's Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Harbor Porpoise	N/A	36,600	0	0.0010	5[d]
False Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	15[d]
Pygmy Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	25[d]
Dwarf Sperm Whale	0.0008970	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Pygmy Sperm Whale	0.0008970	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Melon-Headed Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Sowerby's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600			
Blainville's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600		1.1844	
Gervais' Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600	84		84
True's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600			
Cuvier's Beaked Whale	0.0022870	36,600		1.2860	
Northern Bottlenose Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	2[d]
Pinnipeds					
Harbor seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Gray seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Harp seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Hooded Seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0

[a] Source: OBIS-SERDP-Navy NODE 2007a and 2007b (for those species where density data were available).
[b] Calculated take is estimated density multiplied by the 160-db ensonified area. These calculations do not include any contingency as the survey will be conducted as one continuous line.
[c] Requested takes expressed as percentages of the larger regional populations, where available; where not available (most odontocetes–see Table 2), Draft 2013 SAR population estimates were used; N/A means not available
[d] Requested take authorization was increased to average group size for species for which densities were not available but have been sighted near or have the potential to be observed within the Study Area. Average group size from CeTAP 1984.

Table 4: Densities and Estimates of Possible Numbers of Individuals That Could be Exposed to 160 dB re 1 μPA_{RMS} During Spring (March, April, May) 2015 2-D Seismic Surveys

Species	Mean Density (#/km^2)[a]	Ensonified Area (km^2)	Calculated Take[b]	% of Regional Population[c]	Requested Level B Take Authorization
Mysticetes					
Fin Whale	0.0000600	36,600	3	0.113	3
Humpback Whale	0.0010170	36,600	38	0.3276	38
Minke Whale	0.0000350	36,600	2	0.0014	2
North Atlantic Right Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.6593	3[d]
Blue Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.2339	2[d]
Bryde’s Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	3[d]
Sei Whale	N/A	36,600	0	0.0291	3[d]
Odontocetes					
Atlantic White-sided Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	0.1106	54[d]
Atlantic Spotted Dolphin	0.0285700	36,600	1046	2.3393	1046
Bottlenose Dolphin	0.0069560	36,600	255	0.3289	255
Long-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0108000	36,600	396	0.0408	396
Short-Finned Pilot Whale	0.0108000	36,600	396	0.0508	396
Pantropical Spotted Dolphin	0.0194900	36,600	714	21.422	714
Risso’s Dolphin	0.0092150	36,600	338	1.8520	338
Shorted-beaked Common Dolphin	0.0053940	36,600	198	0.1141	198
Striped Dolphin	0.1330000	36,600	4,868	8.8817	4,868
Sperm Whale	0.0019050	36,600	70	0.5307	70
Killer whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	7[d]
Clymene Dolphin	0.0093110	36,600	341	N/A	341
Spinner Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	65[d]
Rough-Toothed Dolphin	0.0004200	36,600	16	5.9041	16
Fraser’s Dolphin	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Harbor Porpoise	N/A	36,600	0	0.00010	5[d]
False Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	15[d]
Pygmy Killer Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	25[d]
Dwarf Sperm Whale	0.0008850	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Pygmy Sperm Whale	0.0008850	36,600	33	0.8719	33
Melon-Headed Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	100[d]
Sowerby’s Beaked Whale		36,600			
Blainville’s Beaked Whale		36,600		1.1139	
Gervais’ Beaked Whale	0.0021370	36,600	79		79
True’s Beaked Whale		36,600			
Cuvier’s Beaked Whale		36,600		1.2094	
Northern Bottlenose Whale	N/A	36,600	0	N/A	2[d]
Pinnipeds					
Harbor seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Gray seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Harp seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0
Hooded Seal	0	36,600	0	N/A	0

[a] Source: OBIS-SERDP-Navy NODE 2007a and 2007b (for those species where density data were available).
[b] Calculated take is estimated density multiplied by the 160-db ensonified area. These calculations do not include any contingency as the survey will be conducted as one continuous line.
[c] Requested takes expressed as percentages of the larger regional populations, where available; where not available (most odontocetes–see Table 2), Draft 2013 SAR population estimates were used; N/A means not available
[d] Requested take authorization was increased to average group size for species for which densities were not available but have been sighted near or have the potential to be observed within the Study Area. Average group size from CeTAP 1984.

It also should be noted that as summarized from the PEIS in the above section, "Summary of Potential Airgun Effects," delphinids appear to be less responsive to airgun sounds than some mysticetes. The 160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ criterion that the NMFS currently uses to determine potential Level B harassment to all cetaceans was based on recorded reactions of gray and bowhead whales. For delphinids and pinnipeds, a 170 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ disturbance criterion may be more appropriate. Based on this, the estimates of potential "takes by harassment" presented in Table 3 would, therefore, be considered precautionary. Note that the ensonified area (36,600 km^2) shown in Table 3 is calculated for the 2014 survey. The 2015 survey is expected to ensonify an almost identical area (to within 2 %); therefore takes requested are identical for each of the two years. However, the 2015 survey may be scheduled for an earlier time slot. Table 4 indicates the number of takes that would be expected were the survey to be scheduled in the spring rather than summer. The data suggest that spring takes would be higher for only two species: Humpback Whale and Bottlenose Dolphin. Spring takes would be fewer for nine species, and unchanged for the remaining species.

Potential Number of Marine Mammals Exposed

The potential number of different individual marine mammals that could be exposed to airguns at or exceeding 160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ can be determined using the total area that will be located within the 160-dB radius at any one point during the entire survey. In many seismic surveys, this total marine area includes overlap, as seismic surveys are often conducted in parallel survey lines where the ensonified areas of each survey line will overlap. The proposed 2014 survey lines, however, will not have overlap as the individual line segments of the complete 2014 proposed survey line do no run parallel to each other. The entire survey could be considered one continual survey line with slight turns (no more than 90 degrees) between each line segment (see **Figures 5** and **6**). During the proposed 2014 survey, the seismic vessel will continue on the extensive survey line path, not staying within a smaller defined area as most seismic surveys do. Therefore, due to the structure of the proposed 2014 survey, there is a potential for one marine mammal to be exposed to the airgun sounds more than once. It is expected however that, if an individual is exposed at least once at any one point during the survey, that animal is more likely to avoid the survey vessel should it encounter the survey vessel farther down the survey line, reducing the likelihood of a second exposure.

The number of potential individuals exposed to airgun sounds ≥160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ were determined by multiplying each expected species density (for those species that had density data) by the total ensonified area for the entire 3,150 kilometers of the survey line. The total area expected to be ensonified was determined by creating the 160-dB buffer around the entire survey line (see Table 1). This was done using ESRI ArcGIS. Using this approach, a total of 33,193 square kilometers will fall within the 160-dB isopleth throughout the course of the proposed 2014 survey. This approach does not allow for turnover in the marine mammal populations in the area, therefore, the actual number of marine mammals could be underestimated. However, it is expected that the line kilometers used to calculate the potential exposures and the fact that these calculations assume that no marine mammals would move away from the track line during active surveys before the received sound levels reach 160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ result in an overestimation of potential individual exposures.

The total number of individual animals that could be exposed to received levels of seismic sounds ≥160 dB re 1µPa$_{RMS}$ during the entire proposed 2014 survey is 9,866 (Table 3). That total includes 97 cetaceans listed as ***Endangered*** under the ESA, including 3 fin whales (0.011 percent of the regional population), 3 humpback whales (0.026 percent of the regional population), 3 North Atlantic right whales

(0.66 percent of the regional population), 2 blue whales (0.234 percent of the regional population), 3 sei whales (0.029 percent of the regional population), and 83 sperm whales (0.629 percent of the regional population).

Most of the cetaceans (89.2 percent) potentially exposed are delphinids. The most common species in the area are expected to be the striped dolphin (4,916 estimated individuals [8.97 percent of the regional population]), Atlantic spotted dolphin (1056 estimated individuals [2.36 percent of the regional population]), and Pantropical spotted dolphin (724 estimated individuals [21.72 percent of the regional population]). No "takes" of pinnipeds are expected due to a lack of species observations within the Study Area, the great distance offshore , and the extreme depth of the Study Area, as these species are primarily found in coastal waters. It should be noted that the regional populations for each species are the populations reported in the 2013 NMFS Stock Assessment Report (SAR) for species populations within U.S. waters. Therefore, population percentages may be underestimated for actual population sizes that would include waters outside the U.S. EEZ.

Conclusions

As stated earlier, the proposed 2014 survey will consist of operating a seismic airgun array that will introduce pulsed intermittent noise into the marine environment. During this time, both an MBES and an SBP will be operating simultaneously. During the survey, the R*/V Langseth* will be towing a full 36-airgun array with a total volume discharge of approximately 6,600 in^3. Regular vessel operations also are likely to produce sound within the marine environment; however, continuous noise sources such as this are not commonly known to affect marine mammals to the point of "taking." In addition, no takes are expected to result from the operation of the echosounder operations given the discussion found in Sections 3.6.4.3, 3.7.4.3, 3.8.4.3, and Appendix E of the PEIS.

Cetaceans. Sections 3.6.7 and 3.7.7 of the PEIS concluded that with the implementation of the proposed monitoring and mitigation measures, unavoidable impacts to mysticetes and odontocetes (in the Northwest Atlantic Detailed Analysis Area and Mid-Atlantic Ridge Qualitative Analysis Area) are expected to be limited to short-term behavioral disturbance and short-term localized avoidance of the area where airguns are operating. These impacts will result in only a small number of Level B behavioral effects. Level A effects are highly unlikely, and seismic operations are unlikely to adversely affect any ESA-listed species.

Pinnipeds. Section 3.8.7 of the PEIS concluded that pinnipeds are absent or rare in most locations where seismic surveys occur. This is true for the proposed 2014 surveys. However, with the implementation of the proposed monitoring and mitigation measures, impacts to pinnipeds are expected to be limited to behavioral disturbance and, in some cases, localized avoidance of the area where airguns are operating. Level A effects are highly unlikely. Due to the lack of species presence data within the Study Area and the species' preferences for more coastal waters, the proposed survey is not expected to encounter any pinniped species.

This IHA application presents the estimated potential number of marine mammals that could be exposed to pulsed seismic airgun sounds during the proposed 2014 survey. Based on this, "take authorizations" by Level B harassment also have been requested for each species. Overall, the requested take authorizations represent a small percentage of the overall U.S. regional population for each species (see Table 3). Exposure estimates for only one species, the pantropical spotted dolphin, represent greater than 20 percent of the regional population of any species with 656 requested takes. However, it is expected that these, as with the estimates for all of the potential species exposures, are overestimates for the reasons outlined previously. It should also be noted that any bottlenose dolphins potentially encountered during the proposed 2014 survey would primarily be from the offshore morphotype population. This morphotype is genetically distinct from the coastal morphotype populations, which are the populations primarily affected by the recent 2013 UME. Therefore, the potential for Level B harassment of 221 individuals of the offshore bottlenose dolphin morphotype, which represents 0.28 percent of the regional population, would not further affect the potentially vulnerable population of the coastal morphotype.

Overall, the relatively short-term exposures to any marine mammals are unlikely to result in any long-term negative consequences to either individual and animals or populations.

VIII. ANTICIPATED IMPACTS ON SUBSISTENCE USES

The anticipated impact of the activity on the availability of the species or stocks of marine mammals for subsistence uses.

There is no legal subsistence hunting for marine mammals in the western North Atlantic, so the proposed activities will not have any impact on the availability of the species or stocks for subsistence users.

IX. ANTICIPATED IMPACTS ON HABITAT

The anticipated impact of the activity upon the habitat of the marine mammal populations, and the likelihood of restoration of the affected habitat.

The proposed seismic survey would not result in any permanent impact on habitats used by marine mammals or to their food sources. The main impact on marine mammals associated with the proposed 2014 survey activity will be temporarily elevated noise levels and the associated direct effects, as discussed in Section VII, above. Seismic airguns also have the potential to affect fish and invertebrates that serve as prey for marine mammal species. The effects of airguns on fish and invertebrates are reviewed in the PEIS in Sections 3.2.4.3 and 3.3.4.3, and in Appendix D. The PEIS concluded that seismic airguns could have both direct and indirect effects on fish and invertebrate species, including behavioral changes and other non-lethal, temporary impacts, and injury or mortal impacts on individual fish located within direct proximity to an active high-energy acoustic source. However, significant impacts from the proposed 2014 survey to fish or invertebrate populations are not anticipated.

X. ANTICIPATED IMPACT OF LOSS OR MODIFICATION OF HABITAT ON MARINE MAMMALS

The anticipated impact of the loss or modification of the habitat on the marine mammal populations involved.

The proposed 2014 survey is not expected to have any habitat-related effects with the potential to result in significant or long-term impacts on either individual marine mammals or their populations. This is a result of the limited duration of the proposed 2014 survey (approximately 19 days) and the large area the survey will cover. There is a potential that the small number of marine mammals present within the vicinity of the survey vessel while the full airgun array is operating would be temporarily displaced as much as a few kilometers. However, as stated earlier, the proposed 2014 survey is not operating in a small, defined location. The proposed 3,150 kilometers of survey lines are not parallel and the seismic vessel will continuously move along that line. This reduces the potential to create a specific area offshore with repeated seismic activity that marine mammals may avoid.

XI. MITIGATION MEASURES

The availability and feasibility (economic and technological) of equipment, methods, and manner of conducting such activity or other means of effecting the least practicable adverse impact upon the affected species or stocks, their habitat, and on their availability for subsistence uses, paying particular attention to rookeries, mating grounds, and areas of similar significance.

Marine mammals are known to occur within the Study Area. To minimize potential impacts that could occur to species and/or stocks, airgun operations will be conducted in accordance with the MMPA and the ESA. This will include obtaining permission for incidental harassment of incidental "takes" of marine mammals and other federally listed species. The proposed activities will take place both within the U.S. EEZ and in International Waters.

The following subsections outline the proposed mitigation measures that will be followed during the proposed 2014 survey. The procedures described here are based on protocols used during previous L-DEO seismic research cruises as approved by the NMFS.

Planning Phase

As discussed in the PEIS (Section 2.4.1.1), mitigation of potential impacts from the proposed survey begins during the planning phase. The USGS worked with L-DEO and NSF to identify potential time periods to carry out the survey, taking into consideration key factors such as environmental conditions (i.e., the seasonal presence of marine mammals). As most marine mammal species are expected to occur in the Study Area year-round, altering the timing of the proposed 2014 survey from summer months would result in no net benefits to these species. After consideration of what energy source level was necessary to achieve the research goals, USGS determined that the standard *R/V Langseth* 36-airgun array with a total volume of approximately 6,600 in^3 was appropriate.

Proposed Exclusion Zones

Based on L-DEO's model (Diebold et al. 2010 and Appendix H of the PEIS), received sound levels have been predicted for the proposed 2014 survey. The predicted received sound levels are a function of distance from the airguns for both the full 36-airgun array and the single 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun (mitigation gun), which would be used during power-downs (see **Figures 3** and **4**). This modeling approach uses ray tracing for the direct wave traveling from the array to the receiver and its associated source ghost (reflection at the air-water interface in the vicinity of the array), in a constant-velocity half-space (infinite homogeneous ocean layer, unbounded by a seafloor). In addition, propagation measurements of pulses from the 36-airgun array at a tow depth of 6 meters have been reported in approximately 1,600 meters water depth (deep water), 50 meters depth (shallow water) and a slope site (intermediate water depth) in the Gulf of Mexico in 2007–2008 (Tolstoy et al. 2009; Diebold et al. 2010).

For deep water and intermediate water depth cases, these field measurements cannot be used readily to derive mitigation radii. At these sites, the calibration hydrophone was located at a roughly constant depth of 350 to 500 meters, which may not intersect all the SPL isopleths at their widest point from the sea surface down to the maximum relevant water depth for marine mammals of approximately 2,000 meters. Figures 2 and 3 in Appendix H of the PEIS show how the values along the maximum SPL line that connects the points where the isopleths attain their maximum width (providing the maximum distance associated with each sound level) may differ from values obtained along a constant depth line. At short ranges, where the direct arrivals dominate and the effects of seafloor interactions are minimal, the data recorded at the deep and slope sites are suited for comparison with modeled levels at the depth of the calibration hydrophone. At larger ranges, the comparison with the mitigation model—constructed from the maximum SPL through the entire water column at varying distances from the airgun array—is the most relevant. The results are summarized below.

Comparisons at short ranges between sound levels for direct arrivals recorded by the calibration hydrophone and model results for the same array tow depth are consistent (Figures 12 and 14 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Consequently, isopleths falling within this domain can be reliably predicted by the L-DEO model, while they may be imperfectly sampled by measurements recorded at a single depth. At larger distances, the calibration data show that seafloor reflected and sub-seafloor refracted arrivals dominate, while the direct arrivals become weak and/or incoherent (Figures 11, 12 and 16 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Aside from local topography effects, the region around the critical distance (approximately 5 kilometers on Figures 11 and 12, and approximately 4 kilometers in Figure 16 in Appendix H of the PEIS) is where the observed levels rise close to the mitigation model curve. However, the observed sound levels are found to fall almost entirely below the mitigation model curve (Figures 11, 12, and 16 in Appendix H of the PEIS). Thus, analysis of the Gulf of Mexico calibration measurements demonstrates that although simple, the L-DEO model is a robust tool for estimating mitigation radii.

During the proposed 2014 survey, the proposed seismic operations will occur entirely in deep water (i.e., greater than 1,000 meters). Therefore, for the purposes of the proposed 2014 survey, only deep-water radii were predicted. For the full 36-airgun array, the deep-water radii were obtained from 9-meter tow depth L-DEO model results to a maximum water depth of 2,000 meters.

Measurements have not been reported for the single 40-in^3 airgun. The 40-in^3 airgun fits under the PEIS low-energy sources (i.e., any towed acoustic source whose receive level is ≤180 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS} at 100 meters from the source, including any single airgun with a volume ≤ 425 in^3). In the PEIS (Section 2.4.2), Alternative B (the Preferred Alternative) conservatively applies a 100-meter EZ for all low-energy acoustic sources in water depths greater than 100 meters. This approach is adopted here for the single Bolt 1900LL 40-in^3 airgun that would be used during power-downs. In addition, L-DEO model results are used to determine the 160- and 190- dB radii for the 40-in^3 airgun in deep water.

Table 1 shows the modeled distances for both the 36-airgun array and the single mitigation gun at which the 160, 160, and 190 dB re 1 μPa_{RMS} received levels are expected to be reached. The 180-dB re 1 μPa_{RMS} distance is the safety criterion as specified by NMFS (2000) for cetaceans. If marine mammals or sea turtles are detected within, or about to enter, the appropriate exclusion zone, the airguns would be immediately powered down (or shut down if necessary).

New, detailed recommendations for science-based noise exposure criteria have been presented by Southall et al. (2007). The USGS is aware that NOAA is in the process of revising the current guidance for marine mammals regarding acoustic exposure. However, at the time of this IHA application, that guidance has not been finalized. The USGS is prepared to revise its procedures for estimating the number of marine mammals “taken,” EZ’s, etc., as may be required by any new guidelines that may result.

Mitigation during Operations

Mitigation measures that will be adopted during the proposed survey include: (1) power-down procedures, (2) ramp-up procedures; and (3) special procedures for situations of species of particular concern.

Power-down Procedures

A power-down involves reducing the number of airguns operating such that the radius of the 180-dB (or 190-dB) zone is decreased to the extent that an observed marine mammal(s) is (are) no longer observed within the EZ. As the proposed survey does not include any full turns (only 90-degree turns maximum), the seismic airgun array will continue to operate at full power between line segments. The survey will be conducted as the segments are one continuous line. During a power-down, only one airgun will be operating. The continued operation of one-airgun is intended to alert any marine mammals of the presence of the seismic vessel.

If a marine mammal is detected within, or is likely to enter the EZ, the airgun array would be powered down immediately. During a power-down situation of the full air-gun array, only a 40-in^3 airgun will be operated. Following a power-down situation, airgun activity will not resume until the marine mammal has cleared the EZ. The animal will be considered clear of the EZ if it:

- is visually observed to have left the EZ; or
- has not been seen within the EZ for 15 minutes in the case of small odontocetes and pinnipeds; or
- has not been seen within the EZ for 30 minutes in the case of mysticetes and large odontocetes including sperm, pygmy sperm, dwarf sperm, and beaked whales; or
- the vessel has moved outside the applicable EZ in which the animal in question was last seen.

Following a power-down and subsequent animal departure from the EZ as described above, the airgun array would resume full operations. Based on previous *R/V Langseth* marine seismic surveys, it has been determined that following a power-down, ramp-up from the single mitigation gun is not necessary as the single mitigation gun serves to warn any marine mammals within the vicinity of the survey of the seismic activities underway. It has also been determined that the ramp-up procedures may unnecessarily extend the length of the survey time needed to collect the seismic data. Previous surveys conducted by L-DEO and NSF in consultation with the NMFS have concluded that undergoing ramp-up procedures following an extended power-down is not necessary. Therefore, this IHA application does not include this practice as part of the monitoring and mitigation plan.

If an animal is observed within the smaller designated EZ for the single airgun (see Table 1), the airguns will be completely shut down. Airgun operation will not be resumed until the above conditions are met, as applicable.

Shutdown Procedures

Operating airgun(s) will be shut down if a marine mammal is observed within or approaching the EZ for the single airgun. During a shutdown, all operating airguns will be turned off immediately. Airgun activity will not resume until the marine mammal(s) has cleared the EZ for the full array, as described above under “Power-down Procedures.”

Ramp-up Procedures

A ramp-up procedure will be followed when starting the airguns at the beginning of seismic operations or anytime the entire array has been shut down for a specified period of time. Based on other surveys conducted by L-DEO using the *R/V Langseth* and using an airgun array of similar size as the proposed 2014 survey, a period of approximately 10 minutes is proposed for the 2014 survey. Ramp-up will not occur if an observed marine mammal has not cleared the EZ as described above.

Ramp-up will consist of beginning with the smallest airgun in the array (40 in^3). Airguns will then be added in a sequence such that the source level of the array will increase in steps not exceeding 6 dB per 5-minute period. A 36-airgun array is expected to take approximately 30 minutes to achieve full operations. During the ramp-up, NMFS-approved Protected Species Visual Observers (PSVOs) will monitor the EZ, and if a marine mammal is sighted, a power-down or shutdown will be implemented, as applicable, as though the full array were operating.

Ramp-up may not be initiated unless the full EZ is visible to the PSVOs for no less than 30 minutes, whether conducted in daytime or nighttime. Ramp-up may commence even if the entire EZ is not visible for 30 minutes if at least one airgun (40 in^3 or smaller) has been operating during the interruption of seismic survey operations. Therefore, it is not expected that the full airgun array will be ramped-up from a completion shutdown at night or during poor visibility conditions (i.e., thick fog). However, if one airgun has continued during a power-down period, ramp up to full power will be permissible at night or in poor visibility conditions. This is based on the assumption that marine mammals would be alerted to the presence of the seismic vessel by the continually operating mitigation airgun. Ramp-up of the airguns will not be initiated if a marine mammal is present within the EZ of the airgun array to be operated.

As stated above under “Power-down Procedures,” based on previous *R/V Langseth* marine seismic surveys, it has been determined that following a power-down, ramp-up from the single mitigation gun is not necessary as the single mitigation gun serves to warn any marine mammals within the vicinity of the survey of the seismic activities underway. Therefore, this IHA application does not include this practice as part of the monitoring and mitigation plan.

Special Procedures for Situations or Species of Concern

It is unlikely that a North Atlantic right whale (NARW) will be encountered during the proposed survey. However, if a NARW is visually identified at any distance from the vessel during seismic operations, the airguns will be shut down immediately and remain off for a minimum of 30 minutes after the animal is beyond visual range before resuming with ramp-up. This is due to the species rarity and conservation status. In addition, it is unlikely that concentrations (groups of 6 or more individuals) of humpback, fin, sperm, blue, or sei whales will be encountered, but if so, they will be avoided.

XII. Plan of Cooperation

Where the proposed activity would take place in or near a traditional Arctic subsistence hunting area and/or may affect the availability of a species or stock of marine mammal for Arctic subsistence uses, the applicant must submit either a plan of cooperation or information that identifies what measures have been taken and/or will be taken to minimize any adverse effects on the availability of marine mammals for subsistence uses. A plan must include the following:

(i) A statement that the applicant has notified and provided the affected subsistence community with a draft plan of cooperation;

(ii) A schedule for meeting with the affected subsistence communities to discuss proposed activities and to resolve potential conflicts regarding any aspects of either the operation or the plan of cooperation;

(iii) A description of what measures the applicant has taken and/or will take to ensure that proposed activities will not interfere with subsistence whaling or sealing; and

(iv) What plans the applicant has to continue to meet with the affected communities, both prior to and while conducting activity, to resolve conflicts and to notify the communities of any changes in the operation.

Not applicable. The proposed activity will take place in the western North Atlantic, and no activities will take place in or near a traditional Arctic subsistence hunting area.

XIII. Monitoring and Reporting Plan

The suggested means of accomplishing the necessary monitoring and reporting that will result in increased knowledge of the species, the level of taking or impacts on populations of marine mammals that are expected to be present while conducting activities and suggested means of minimizing burdens by coordinating such reporting requirements with other schemes already applicable to persons conducting such activity. Monitoring plans should include a description of the survey techniques that would be used to determine the movement and activity of marine mammals near the activity site(s) including migration and other habitat uses, such as feeding.

The USGS proposes to sponsor marine mammal monitoring during the proposed 2014 survey in order to implement the proposed mitigation measures that require real-time monitoring and to satisfy the anticipated monitoring requirements of the IHA.

The proposed Monitoring and Reporting Plan for the USGS is described below. The USGS understands that this Monitoring and Reporting Plan will be subject to review by the NMFS and that refinements may be required.

The monitoring work described in association with the proposed 2014 survey has been planned as a self-contained project, independent of any other related monitoring projects that may be occurring simultaneously in the same regions. The USGS is prepared to discuss coordination of its monitoring program with any related work that subsequently might be conducted by other groups insofar as it is practicable and desirable.

Vessel-based Visual Monitoring

Vessel-based PSVO observations will take place during daytime airgun operations and before and during start-ups of airguns during daytime or nighttime. Airgun operations will be suspended when marine mammals are observed within, or about to enter, the designated EZ where there is concern about potential effects on hearing or other physical effects (see Section XI). PSVOs also will be on watch for marine mammals within the EZ for at least 30 minutes prior to the start of seismic operations following an extended shutdown. PSVOs will remain on watch during daytime periods when the seismic airguns are not operating in order to compare animal abundance and behaviors during times of operation and no operation.

In total, five PSVOs will be deployed aboard the *R/V Langset*. Two PSVOs will remain on watch during daytime seismic operations, with at least one PSVO remaining on watch during meal times and restroom breaks. PSVO shifts will last no longer than four hours at a time. The *R/V Langseth* crew will be instructed to assist in observing any marine mammals while they are on watch.

The *R/V* Langseth will serve as the observation platform for marine mammals during the proposed 2014 survey. When the PSVO is stationed on the observation platform, the PSVO eye level will be approximately 21.5 meters above sea level, and each observer will have a good view around the entire vessel. PSVOs will use reticle binoculars (7x50 Fujinon), big-eye binoculars (25x150), and the naked eye during observations. Laser range-finding binoculars (Leica LRF 1200 laser rangefinder or equivalent) will be available to assist with distance estimation. Those are useful in training PSVOs to estimate distances visually, but are generally not useful in measuring distances to animals directly; that is done primarily with the reticles in the binoculars. In addition, both forward-looking infrared camera and night vision monoculars will be available for use in low-light conditions.

Passive Acoustic Monitoring

Passive acoustic monitoring (PAM) will be conducted to complement the visual monitoring program. Visual monitoring typically is not effective during periods of poor visibility or at night, and even with good visibility, is unable to detect marine mammals when they are below the surface or beyond visual range. Acoustical monitoring can be used in addition to visual monitoring to improve species detection, identification, and localization of cetaceans. However, it should be noted that PAM only works when a marine mammal is actually vocalizing. During the proposed 2014 survey, PAM will be monitored in real-time so that visual observers can be advised when cetaceans are acoustically detected.

The PAM system available on-board the *R/V Langseth* consists of both hardware and software. The deployed part of the system includes a towed hydrophone array stretching approximately 250 meters behind the vessel. The hydrophones are located on the last 10 meters of the towed cable. The cable will typically be towed at 20 meters depth or less. The Pamguard software is used to amplify, digitize, and processed the acoustic signals received by the hydrophones. This particular system can detect marine mammal vocalizations at frequencies up to 250 kHz. The PAM hydrophones respond in the 10 Hz to 200 kHz bandwidth.

One Protected Species Acoustic Observer (PSAO) or one PSVO will monitor the PAM system at all times in shifts no greater than six hours. A PSAO will design and set up the PAM system and be present to operate, oversee, and troubleshoot any technical problems with the PAM system during the proposed survey. When the PAM system detects a vocalization, the PAM operator will alert the PSVOs to the presence of a marine mammal, and a power-down or shutdown can be initiated, if required. The PSAO will enter the vocalization data into a database. The data to be entered includes an acoustic encounter identification number, whether it was linked with a visual sighting, date, time when first and last heard and when any additional information was recorded, position, and water depth when first detected, bearing if determinable, species or species group (e.g., unidentified dolphin, sperm whale), types and nature of the sounds heard (e.g., clicks, continuous, sporadic, whistles, creaks, burst pulses, strength of signal, etc.), and any other notable information.

PSVO Data and Documentation

PSVOs will record data to estimate the numbers of marine mammals exposed to various received sound levels and to document the behavior of the animal upon sighting. These data will be included in the report submitted to the NMFS and will be used to estimate numbers of marine mammals potentially “taken” by harassment. PSVOs will also provide information needed to order a power-down or a shutdown of airguns when marine mammals are within or near the appropriate EZ.

When a sighting is made, the following information about the sighting will be recorded:

1. Species, group size, age/size/sex categories (if determinable), behavior when first sighted and after initial sighting, heading (if consistent), bearing and distance from seismic vessel, sighting cue, apparent reaction to the airguns or vessel (e.g., none, avoidance, approach, paralleling, etc.), and behavioral pace.
2. Time, location, heading, speed, activity of the vessel, sea state, visibility, and sun glare.

The data listed under (2) will be recorded at the start and at the end of each observation watch, and during watch whenever there is a change in one or more of the variables.

All observations and power-downs or shutdowns will be recorded in a standardized format. Data will be entered into an electronic database. The accuracy of the data entry will be verified by computerized data validity checks as the data are entered and by subsequent manual checking of the database. These procedures will allow initial summaries of data to be prepared during and shortly after the field program and will facilitate transfer of the data to statistical, graphical, and other programs for further processing and archiving.

Results from the vessel-based observations will provide:

1. The basis for real-time mitigation (airgun power-down or shutdown).
2. Information needed to estimate the number of marine mammals potentially taken by harassment, which must be reported to the NMFS.
3. Data on the occurrence, distribution, and activities of marine mammals in the area where the seismic study is conducted.
4. Information to compare the distance and distribution of marine mammals relative to the source vessel at times with and without seismic activity.

5. Data on the behavior and movement patterns of marine mammals and turtles seen at times with and without seismic activity.

A report will be submitted to the NMFS and the USGS within 90 days of the completion of the proposed 2014 survey cruise. A second report will similarly be filed upon completion of the 2015 survey. The report will describe the seismic operations conducted and sightings of marine mammals within the vicinity of the operations. The report will include full documentation of methods, results, and interpretation pertaining to all monitoring. The report will summarize the dates and locations of seismic operations, and all marine mammal sightings (dates, times, locations, activities, associated seismic survey activities). Finally, the report will include estimates of the number and nature of exposures that could result in “takes” of marine mammals by Level B harassment or in other ways.

XIV. Coordinating Research to Reduce and Evaluate Incidental Take

Suggested means of learning of, encouraging, and coordinating research opportunities, plans, and activities relating to reducing such incidental taking and evaluating its effects.

The USGS will coordinate the planned marine mammal monitoring program associated with the seismic survey (as summarized in Sections XI and XIII) with any parties who express interest in this survey activity. The USGS will coordinate with applicable U.S. agencies (i.e., NMFS) and will comply with their requirements.

XV. Literature Cited

Andersen, J. M., Y. F. Wiersma, G. Stenson, M. O. Hammill, and A. Rosing-Asvid. 2009. Movement Patterns of Hooded Seals *(Cystophora cristata)* in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean During the Post-Moult and Pre-Breed Seasons. J. Northw. Atl. Fish Sci., 42: 1–11. doi:10.2960/J.v42.m649.

Antochiw, D., A. Dubuque, S. Milne, D. Palacios, and M. Piercy. n.d. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring report for the Costa Rica 3D seismic survey (Bangs Crisp Project) in the Pacific Ocean offshore Costa Rica, 7 April 2011–12 May 2011, R/V *Marcus G. Langseth*. Rep. from RPS, Houston, TX, for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 45 p. +app.

Barco, S.G., W.A. McLellan, J.M. Allen, R.A. Asmutis-Silvia, R. Mallon-Day, E.M. Meagher, D.A.Pabst, J.Robbins, R.E. Seton, W.M. Swingle, M.T. Weinrich, and P.J. Clapham. 2002. Population Identity of Humpback Whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the Waters of the U.S. Mid-Atlantic States. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management4 (2):135-141.

Bain, D.E. and R. Williams. 2006. Long--range effects of airgun noise on marine mammals: responses as a function of received sound level and distance. Paper SC/58/E35 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, IWC Annual Meeting, 1--13 June, St. Kitts.

Baird, R.W. 2005. Sightings of dwarf (*Kogia sima*) and pygmy (*K. breviceps*) sperm whales from the main Hawaiian Islands. *Pacific Science*. 59:461--466.

Baumgartner M.F. and B.R. Mate. 2005. Summer and fall habitat of North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) inferred from satellite telemtetry. *Canadian Journal of Fish and Aquatic Science*. 62: 527-543.

Barkaszi, M.J., D.M. Epperson, and B. Bennett. 2009. Six--year compilation of cetacean sighting data collected during commercial seismic survey mitigation observations throughout the Gulf of Mexico, USA. Pages 24--25 *in* Abstracts of the 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, 12--16 October 2009, Québec City, Canada.

Best, P.B. and C.H. Lockyer. 2002. Reproduction, Growth and Migration of Sei Whales Balaenoptera borealis Off the West Coast of South Africa in the 1960s. *South African Journal of Marine Science* 24:111-133.

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management. 2012. Atlantic OCS Proposed Geological and Geophysical Activities Mid-Atlantic and South Atlantic Planning Areas Draft Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement. Volume I: Chapters 1-8. Online: http://www.boem.gov/BOEM-Newsroom/Library/Publications/2012/BOEM-2012-005-vol1-pdf.aspx.

Cattanach, K.L., J. Sigurjónsson, S.T. Buckland, and T. Gunnlaugsson. 1993. Sei whale abundance in the North Atlantic, estimated from NASS-87 and NASS-89 data. *Report of the International Whaling Commission***.** 43:315-321.

Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program (CeTAP). 1982. A Characterization of Marine Mammals and Sea Turtles in the Mid- and North Atlantic Areas of the U.S. Continental Shelf. Final Report of the Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program. December 1982. Prepared for: U.S. Department of the Interior Bureau of Land Management.

Clark, C.W. 1995. Application of U.S. Navy underwater hydrophone arrays for scientific research on whales. *Rep. Int. Whal. Comm.* 45: 210-212.

Clark, C.W. and G.C. Gagnon. 2006. Considering the temporal and spatial scales of noise exposures from seismic surveys on baleen whales. International Whaling Commission Working Pap. SC/58/E9.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2012. Current Status of Northwest Atlantic Harp Seals (*Pagophilus groenlandicus*). DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Sci. Advis. Rep. 2011/070. Online: http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/csas-sccs/Publications/SAR-AS/2011/2011_070-eng.pdf . Accessed December 16, 2013.

Department of the Navy. 2007a. Navy OPAREA Density Estimates (NODE) for the Northeast OPAREAs: Boston, Narragansett Bay, and Atlantic City. Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic; Norfolk, Virginia, Contract N62470-02-D-9997, Task Order 0045. Prepared by Geo-Marine Inc. Plano, Texas.

___________. 2007b. Navy OPAREA Density Estimates (NODE) for the Southeast OPAREAs: VACAPES, CHPT, JAX/CHASN, and Southeastern Florida & AUTEC-Andros. Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic; Norfolk, Virginia. Contract N62470-02-D-9997, Task Order 0060. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc. Hampton, Virginia.

Diebold, J.B., M. Tolstoy, L. Doermann, S.L. Nooner, S.C. Webb, and T.J. Crone. 2010. R/V Marcus G. Langseth seismic source: modeling and calibration. *Geochemistry Geophysics Geosystems*. 11(12): 20 pages

Di Iorio, L. and C.W. Clark. 2010. Exposure to seismic survey alters blue whale acoustic communication. *Biology Letters*. 6:51--54.

Finneran, J.J., C.E. Schlundt, D.A. Carder, J.A. Clark, J.A. Young, J.B. Gaspin, and S.H. Ridgway. 2000. Auditory and behavioral responses of bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) and beluga whale (*Delphinapterus leucas*) to impulsive sounds resembling distant signatures of underwater explosions. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 108:417--431.

Finneran, J.J., C.E. Schlundt, R. Dear, D.A. Carder, and S.H. Ridgway. 2002. Temporary shift in masked hearing thresholds in odontocetes after exposure to single underwater impulses from a seismic watergun. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 111:2929--2940.

Finneran, J.J., D.A. Carder, C.E. Schlundt, and S.H. Ridgway. 2005. Temporary threshold shift in bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) exposed to mid--frequency tones. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America.* 118(4):2696--2705.

Gordon, J., D. Gillespie, J. Potter, A. Frantzis, M.P. Simmonds, R. Swift, *1* and D. Thompson. 2004. A review of the effects of seismic surveys on marine mammals. *Marine Technology Society Journal*. 37(4):16--34.

Gordon, J., R. Antunes, N. Jaquet and B. Würsig. 2006. An investigation of sperm whale headings and surface behaviour before, during and after seismic line changes in the Gulf of Mexico. International Whaling Commission Working Paper SC/58/E45.

Hain, J.H.W., M.J. Ratnaswamy, R.D. Kenney, and H.E. Winn. 1992. The fin whale, *Balaenoptera physalus*, in waters of the northeastern United States continental shelf. Report of the International Whaling Commission 42:653-669.

Hauser, D.D.W., M. Holst, and V.D. Moulton. 2008. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont- Doherty Earth Observatory's marine seismic program in the Eastern Tropical Pacific, April–August 2008. LGL Rep. TA4656/7-1. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., and St. John's, Nfld., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 98 p.

Holst, M. 2009. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's TAIGER marine seismic program near Taiwan, April–July 2009. LGL Rep. TA4553-4. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont. for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 103 p.

Holst, M. and J. Beland. 2008. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's seismic testing and calibration study in the northern Gulf of Mexico, November 2007–February 2008. LGL Rep. TA4295-2. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 77 p.

Holst, M. and M.A. Smultea. 2008. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's marine seismic program off Central America, February–April 2008. LGL Rep. TA4342-3. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service., Silver Spring, MD. 133 p.

Holst, M., M.A. Smultea, W.R. Koski, and B. Haley. 2005a. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's marine seismic program in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean off Central America, November–December 2004. LGL Rep. TA2822-30. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 125 p.

______________. 2005b. Marine mammal and sea turtle monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's marine seismic program off the northern Yucatán Peninsula in the southern Gulf of Mexico, January–February 2005. LGL Rep. TA2822-31. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 96 p.

International Association of Geophysical Contractors. 2004. Further analysis of 2002 Abrolhos Bank, Brazil humpback whale strandings coincident with seismic surveys. International Association of Geophysical Contractors, Houston, TX.

International Whaling Commission (IWC). 2014. Whale population estimates: population table. Last updated September 1, 2009. Online: http://iwc.int/estimate.htm. Accessed March 7, 2014.

Jefferson, T.A., M.A. Webber, and R.L. Pitman. 2008. Marine mammals of the world: a comprehensive guide to their identification. Elsevier, London, U.K. 573 p.

Jochens, A. D. Biggs, K. Benoit--Bird, D. Engelhaupt, J. Gordon, C. Hu, N. Jaquet, M. Johnson, R. Leben, B. Mate, P. Miller, J. Ortega--Ortiz, A. Those, P. Tyack, and B. Würsig. 2008. Sperm whale seismic study in the Gulf of Mexico/Synthesis report. OCS Study MMS 2008--006. Report from the Department of Oceanography, Texas A&M University, College Station, TX, for the Minerals Management Service, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA.

Kenney R.D. and H.E. Winn. 1987. Cetacean Biomass Densities Near Submarine Canyons Compared to Adjacent Shelf/Slope Areas. Continental Shelf Research 7:107-114.

Ljungblad, D.K., B. Würsig, S.L. Swartz, and J.M. Keene. 1988. Observations on the behavioral responses of bowhead whales (*Balaena mysticetus*) to active geophysical vessels in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea. Arctic 41:183-194.

Lusseau, D. and L. Bejder. 2007. The long--term consequences of short--term responses to disturbance experience from whale watching impact assessment. *International Journal of Comparative Psychology*. 20:228-236.

MacLean, S.A. and W.R. Koski. 2005. Marine mammal monitoring during Lamont--Doherty Earth Observatory's seismic program in the Gulf of Alaska, August–September 2004. LGL Report TA2822--28. Prepared by LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont--Doherty Earth Observatory, Columbia University, Palisades, NY, and NMFS, Silver Spring, MD.

Madsen, P.T., B. Mohl, B.K. Nielsen, and M. Wahlberg. 2002. Male sperm whale behavior during exposures to distant seismic survey pulses. *Aquatic Mammals*. 28:231--240.

Madsen, P.T., M. Johnson, P.J.O. Miller, N. Aguilar de Soto, J. Lynch, and P.L. Tyack. 2006. Quantitative measures of air gun pulses recorded on sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) using acoustic tags during controlled exposure experiments. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 120:2366–2379.

Malme, C.I., B. Würsig, B., J.E. Bird, and P. Tyack. 1988. Observations of feeding gray whale responses to controlled industrial noise exposure. Pages 55--73 *in* W.M. Sackinger, M.O. Jeffries, J.L. Imm, and S.D. Treacy, eds. Port and Ocean Engineering Under Arctic Conditions. Vol. II. Symposium on Noise and Marine Mammals. University of Alaska Fairbanks, Fairbanks, AK.

Malme, C.I., B. Würsig, J.E. Bird, and P. Tyack. 1986. Behavioral responses of gray whales to industrial noise: feeding observations and predictive modeling. Outer Continental Shelf Environmental Assessment Program, Final Report. BBN Rep. 6265. OCS Study MMS 88--0048. Prepared by BBN Labs Inc., Cambridge, MA, for NMFS and MMS, Anchorage, AK.

Malme, C.I. and P.R. Miles. 1985. Behavioral responses of marine mammals (gray whales) to seismic discharges. Pages 253--280 *in* G.D. Greene, F.R. Engelhard, and R.J. Paterson, eds. Proceedings of the Workshop on Effects of Explosives Use in the Marine Environment, Jan. 1985, Halifax, NS. Technical Report 5. Canadian Oil & Gas Lands Administration, Environmental Protection Branch, Ottawa, ON.

Malme, C.I., P.R. Miles, P. Tyack, C.W. Clark, and J.E. Bird. 1985. Investigation of the potential effects of underwater noise from petroleum industry activities on feeding humpback whale behavior. BBN Report 5851; OCS Study MMS 85-0019. Prepared by BBN Labs Inc., Cambridge, MA, for MMS, Anchorage, AK.

Malme, C.I., P.R. Miles, C.W. Clark, P. Tyack, and J.E. Bird. 1984. Investigations of the potential effects of underwater noise from petroleum industry activities on migrating gray whale behavior/Phase II: January 1984 migration. BBN Report 5586. Prepared by Bolt Beranek & Newman Inc., Cambridge, MA, for MMS, Alaska OCS Region, Anchorage, AK.

Mate, B.M., S. L. Nieukirk, and S.D. Kraus. 1997. Satellite-Monitored Movements of the Northern Right Whale Journal of Wildlife Management. 61:1393-1405.

Mate, B.R. and J.T. Harvey. 1987. Acoustical deterrents in marine mammal conflicts with fisheries. ORESU--W--86--001. Oregon State University, Sea Grant College Program, Corvallis, OR.

McCauley, R.D., M-N. Jenner, C. Jenner, K.A. McCabe, and J. Murdoch. 1998. The response of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) to offshore seismic survey noise: preliminary results of observations about a working seismic vessel and experimental exposures. *APPEA Journal.* 38:692-707.

McCauley, R.D., J. Fewtrell, A.J. Duncan, C. Jenner, M.-N. Jenner, J.D. Penrose, R.I.T. Prince, A. Adhitya, J. Murdoch and K. McCabe. 2000a. Marine seismic surveys - a study of environmental implications. *APPEA Journal.* 40:692-706.

____________. 2000b. Marine seismic surveys: Analysis of airgun signals; and effects of air gun exposure on humpback whales, sea turtles, fishes and squid. Report from Centre for Marine Science and Technology, Curtin University, Perth, Western Australia, for Australian Petroleum Production & Exploration Association, Sydney, NSW.

Miller, G.W., R.E. Elliott, W.R. Koski, V.D. Moulton, and W.J. Richardson. 1999. Whales. Pages 5-1 to 5-109 *in* W.J. Richardson, ed. Marine mammal and acoustical monitoring of Western Geophysical's open--water seismic program in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea, 1998. LGL Report TA2230--3. Prepared by LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., and Greeneridge Sciences Inc., Santa Barbara, CA, for Western Geophysical, Houston, TX, and NMFS, Anchorage, AK, and Silver Spring, MD.

Miller, G.W., V.D. Moulton, R.A. Davis, M. Holst, P. Millman, A. MacGillivray, and D. Hannay. 2005. Monitoring seismic effects on marine mammals—southeastern Beaufort Sea, 2001--2002. Pages 511-542 in S.L. Armsworthy, P.J. Cranford, and K. Lee, eds. Offshore Oil and Gas Environmental Effects Monitoring/Approaches and Technologies. Battelle Press, Columbus, OH.

Miller, P.J.O., M.P. Johnson, P.T. Madsen, N. Biassoni, M. Quero, and P.L. Tyack. 2009. Using at--sea experiments to study the effects of airguns on the foraging behavior of sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico. *Deep--Sea Research I*. 56:1168--1181.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2000. Small takes of marine mammals incidental to specified activities: marine seismic-reflection data collection in southern California/Notice of receipt of application. *Federal Register.* 65(60, 28 Mar.): 16374-16379.

___________. 2001. Small takes of marine mammals incidental to specified activities; oil and gas exploration drilling activities in the Beaufort Sea/Notice of issuance of an incidental harassment authorization. *Federal Register*. 66:9291--9298.

___________. 2010. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants: Threatened Status for Southern Distinct Population Segment of Eulachon. Federal Register 75:13012-13024.

___________. 2012. Sei Whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) 5 Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Silver Spring, MD.

Nieukirk, S.L., K.M. Stafford, D.K. Mellinger, R.P. Dziak, and C.G. Fox. 2004. Low-frequency whale and seismic airgun sounds recorded in the mid-Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America.* 115: 1832-1843.

National Research Council. 2005. Marine Mammal Populations and Ocean Noise: Determining When Noise Causes Biologically Significant Effects. U. S. National Research Council, Ocean Studies Board. (Authors D.W. Wartzok, J. Altmann, W. Au, K. Ralls, A. Starfield, and P.L. Tyack). National Academies Press, Washington, DC.

NOAA Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources (NOAA Fisheries OPR). 2012a. Bryde's Whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*). Updated December 5, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/brydeswhale.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012b. Long-finned pilot whale (*Globicephala melas*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/pilotwhale_longfinned.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012c. Short-finned pilot whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/pilotwhale_shortfinned.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012d. Striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/stripeddolphin.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012e. Clymene dolphin (*Stenella clymene*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/clymenedolphin.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012f. Spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/spinnerdolphin.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012g. Rough-toothed dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/roughtootheddolphin.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012h. Fraser's dolphin (*Lagenodelphis hosei*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/frasersdolphin.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012i. Pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/pygmykillerwhale.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012j. Pygmy sperm whale (*Kogia breviceps*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/pygmyspermwhale.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012k. Dwarf sperm whale (*Kogia sima*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/dwarfspermwhale.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012l. Melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/melonheadedwhale.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012m. Sowerby's beaked whale (*Mesopodon bidens*). Updated December 12, 2012. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_sowerbys.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012n. Blainville's beaked whale (*Mesopodon europaeus)*. Updated December 12, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_blainvilles.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012o. Gervais' beaked whale (*Mesopodon densirostris*). Updated December 12, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_gervais.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012p. True's beaked whale (*Mesopodon mirus*). Updated December 12, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_trues.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

____________. 2012q. Cuvier's beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*). Updated December 12, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_cuviers.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

___________. 2012r. Northern bottlenose whale (*Hyperoodon ampullatus*). Updated December 12, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/beakedwhale_cuviers.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

___________. 2012s. Hooded seal (*Crystophora cristata*). Updated November 26, 2012. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/pinnipeds/hoodedseal.htm. Accessed November 25, 2013.

___________. 2013a. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports (SARs) by Species/Stock. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/species.htm#dolphins. Accessed December 15, 2013.

__________. 2013b. Harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*). Updated May 2, 2013. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/harborporpoise.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

__________. 2013c. False killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*). Updated August 14, 2013. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/mammals/cetaceans/harborporpoise.htm. Accessed November 15, 2013.

Nowacek, D.P., L.H. Thorne, D.W. Johnston, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Responses of cetaceans to anthropogenic noise. *Mammal Review* 37:81-115.

Palka, D.L. 2006. Summer abundance estimates of cetaceans in US North Atlantic Navy Operating Areas. Northeast Fisheries Science Center Reference Document 06-03. NMFS, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, MA.

Pierson, M.O., J.P. Wagner, V. Langford, P. Birnie, and M.L. Tasker. 1998. Protection from, and mitigation of, the potential effects of seismic exploration on marine mammals. Chapter 7 *In*: M.L. Tasker and C. Weir (eds.), Proceedings of the Seismic and Marine Mammals Workshop, London, U.K., 23–25 June 1998.

Pike, D.G., G.A. Víkingsson, T. Gunnlaugsson, and N. Øien. 2009. A note on the distribution and abundance of blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the central and northeast North Atlantic. *NAMMCO Scientific Publication Series***.** 7:19-29.

Read, A.J., P.N. Halpin, L.B. Crowder, B.D. Best, and E. Fujioka (eds.). 2009. OBIS-SEAMAP: Mapping marine mammals, birds and turtles. Online: http://seamap.env.duke.edu. Accessed November 25, 2013.

Reeves, R.R., R.J. Hofman, G.K. Silber, and D. Wilkinson. 1996. Acoustic deterrence of harmful marine mammal--fishery interactions: proceedings of a workshop held in Seattle, Washington, 20--22 March 1996. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS--OPR--10. NMFS, Northwest Fisheries Science Center, Seattle, WA.

Reeves, R.R., C. Smeenk, R.L. Brownell, Jr., and C.C. Kinze. 1999. Atlantic white-sided dolphin *Lagenorhynchus acutus* (Gray, 1828). p. 31-58 *In*: S.H. Ridgeway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 6: The second handbook of dolphins and the porpoises. Academic Press, San Diego, CA. 486 p.

Reeves, R.R., B.S. Stewart, P.J. Clapham, and J.A. Powell. 2002. Guide to Marine Mammals of the World. New York: Alfred A. Knopf. 527 p.

Reilly, S.B., J.L. Bannister, P.B. Best, M. Brown, R.L. Brownell Jr., D.S. Butterworth, P.J. Clapham, J. Cooke, G.P. Donovan, J. Urbán, and A.N. Zerbini. 2008. *Balaenoptera edeni*. In: IUCN 2012. IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2013.1. Online: www.iucnredlist.org. Accessed: 18 June 2013.

Richardson, W.J., M. Holst, W.R. Koski, and M. Cummings. 2009. Responses of cetaceans to large-source seismic surveys by Lamont--Doherty Earth Observatory. Page 213 *in* Abstracts of the 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, 12--16 October 2009, Québec City, Canada.

Richardson, W.J., C.R. Greene, Jr., C.I. Malme, and D.H. Thomson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Richardson, W.J., B. Würsig, and C.R. Greene. 1986. Reactions of bowhead whales, *Balaena mysticetus*, to seismic exploration in the Canadian Beaufort Sea. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 79:1117--1128.

Schilling, M.R., I. Seipt, M.T. Weinrich, S.E. Frohock, A.E. Kuhlberg, and P.J. Clapham. 1992. Behaviour of Individually-Identified Sei Whale Balaenoptera borealis During an Episodic Influx into the Southern Gulf of Maine in 1986. *Fisheries Bulletin.* 90:749-755.

Simard, Y., F. Samaran, and N. Roy. 2005. Measurement of whale and seismic sounds in the Scotian Gully and adjacent canyons in July 2003. Page 97-115 in K. Lee, H. Bain and C.V. Hurley, eds. Acoustic Monitoring and Marine Mammal Surveys in The Gully and Outer Scotian Shelf Before and During Active Seismic Surveys. Environmental Studies Research Funds Report 151.

Southall, B., Bowles, A., Ellison, W., Finnerman, J., Gentry, R., Greene Jr., C., Katsak, D., Ketten, D., Miller, J., Nachtigall, P. Richardson, W., Thomas, J., Tyack, P. 2007. Marine Mammal Noise Exposure Criteria: Initial Scientific Recommendations. *Aquatic Mammals*. 33(4): 411-509.

Smultea, M.A., M. Holst, W.R. Koski, and S. Stoltz. 2004. Marine mammal monitoring during Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory's seismic program in the southeast Caribbean Sea and adjacent Atlantic Ocean, April– June 2004. LGL Rep. TA2822-26. Rep. from LGL Ltd., King City, Ont., for Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory of Columbia Univ., Palisades, NY, and National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 106 p.

Stone, C.J. 2003. The effects of seismic activity on marine mammals in UK waters 1998--2000. JNCC Report 323. Joint Nature Conservation Committee, Aberdeen, Scotland.

Stone, C.J. and M.L. Tasker. 2006. The effects of seismic airguns on cetaceans in UK waters. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management.* 8:255-263.

Swingle, W.M., S.G. Barco, T.D. Pitchford, W.A. McLellan, and A. Pabst. 1993. Appearance of juvenile humpback whales feeding in the nearshore waters of Virginia. *Marine Mammal Science*. 9(3):309-315

Tolstoy, M., J. Diebold, L. Doermann, S. Nooner, S.C. Webb, D.R. Bohenstiehl, T.J. Crone, and R.C. Holmes.2009. Broadband calibration of R/V *Marcus G. Langseth* four-string seismic sources. *Geochemistry Geophysics Geosystems.* 10(8).

Tyack, P.L. 2009. Human-generated sound and marine mammals. Physics Today 62(11): 39-44.

Waring, G. T., E. Johnson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel, editors. 2013. Draft U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments – 2013. Online: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/ao2013_draft.pdf.

____________. 2011. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessment – 2010. NOAA Tech Memo NMFS NE 219; 595p. Online: http://www.nefsc.noaa.gov/publications/tm/tm219/tm219.pdf

Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, C.P. Fairfield, K. Maze-Foley, editors. 2006. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments-2005. NOAA Tech Memo 194. Online: http://www.nefsc.noaa.gov/publications/tm/tm194/tm194.pdf

Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, C.P. Fairfield-Walsh, K. Maze-Foley, editors. 2009. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments-2008. NOAA Tech Memo 210. Online: http://www.nefsc.noaa.gov/publications/tm/tm210/tm210.pdf

Wartzok, D., A.N. Popper, J. Gordon, and J. Merrill. 2004. Factors affecting the responses of marine mammals to acoustic disturbance. *Marine Technology Society Journal*. 37(4):6-15.

Weir, C.R. and S.J. Dolman. 2007. Comparative review of the regional marine mammal mitigation guidelines implemented during industrial seismic surveys, and guidance towards a worldwide standard. *Journal of International Wildlife Law and Policy*. 10(1):1-27.

Weilgart, L.S. 2007. A brief review of known effects of noise on marine mammals. *International Journal of Comparative Psychology*. 20:159--168.

Whitehead, H. 2002. Estimates of the current global population size and historical trajectory for sperm whales. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*. 242:295-304.

Wright, A.J., N. Aguilar Soto, A.L. Baldwin, M. Bateson, C.M. Beale, C. Clark, T. Deak, E.F. Edwards, A. Fernández, A. Godinho, L.T. Hatch, A. Kakuschke, D. Lusseau, D. Martineau, L.M. Romero, L.S. Weilgart, B.A. Wintle, G. Notarbartolo-di-Sciara, and V. Martin. 2007a. Do marine mammals experience stress related to anthropogenic noise? *International Journal of Comparative Psychology*. 20:274-316.

Wright, A.J., N. Aguilar Soto, A.L. Baldwin, M. Bateson, C.M. Beale, C. Clark, T. Deak, E.F. Edwards, A. Fernández, A. Godinho, L.T. Hatch, A. Kakuschke, D. Lusseau, D. Martineau, L.M. Romero, L.S. Weilgart, B.A. Wintle, G. Notarbartolo-di-Sciara and V. Martin. 2007b. Anthropogenic noise as a stressor in animals: A multidisciplinary perspective. *International Journal of Comparative Psychology*. 20: 250-273.

Würsig, B., S.K. Lynn, T.A. Jefferson, and K.D. Mullin. 1998. Behaviour of cetaceans in the northern Gulf of Mexico relative to survey ships and aircraft. *Aquatic Mammals*. 24:41--50.